

UC-NRLF



\$B 259 479

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA.
GIFT OF

Miss M. W. Shinn.

Received *Mar.* 1895.

Accessions No. *59466* Class No. *760*
H282

and Synonymes. (Just published.)

———— **Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War**, with Notes, Dictionary, Life of Cæsar, Map of Gaul, Plans of Battles, etc.

———— **Cicero's Select Orations**, with Notes, etc.

Arnold's First and Second Latin Book and Practical Grammar.* Revised and corrected. By J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo. 359 pages.

———— **Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition.*** Revised and corrected. By J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo. 356 pages.

Cornelius Nepos,* with Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. With Notes by E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in University of New York. New edition, enlarged, with a Lexicon, Historical and Geographical Index, etc. 12mo. 350 pages.

Beza's Latin Version of the New Testament. 12mo. 291 pages.

Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory; a Lexicon, Geographical and Historical Indexes, and a Map of Gaul. By J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo. 408 pages.

Cicero's Select Orations. With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in the University of New York. 12mo. 459 pages.

Cicero de Officiis. With English Notes, mostly translated from Zump and Bonnell. By THOMAS A. THACHER, of Yale College. 12mo. 194 pages.

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

Horace, The Works of. With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. LINCOLN, Professor of Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 575 pages.

Livy. Selections from the first five books, together with the twenty-first and twenty-second books entire. With a Plan of Rome, and a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Prof. of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 329 pages.

Quintus Curtius: Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and illustrated with English Notes, by WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo. 385 pages.

Sallust's Jugurtha and Catilina. With Notes and a Vocabulary. By BUTLER and STURGEON. 12mo. 397 pages.

It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition heretofore published in this country.

The Histories of Tacitus. With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of Latin and Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 453 pages.

Tacitus's Germania and Agricola. With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER. 12mo. 193 pages.

Virgil's Æneid.* With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY FRIEZE, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. (Recently published.) 12mo. 598 pages.

The type is unusually large and distinct. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, customs, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients, with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations.

GREEK TEXT-BOOKS.


A First Greek Book* and Introductory Reader. By A. HARKNESS, Ph. D., author of "Arnold's First Latin Book." "Second Latin Book," etc. (Recently published.) 12mo. 276 pages.

Acts of the Apostles, according to the text of AUGUSTUS HAHN. With Notes and a Lexicon by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D. With Map. 12mo.

Arnold's First Greek Book,* on the Plan of the First Latin Book. 12mo. 297 pages.

Arnold's Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.* 12mo. 297 pages.

——— **Second Part to the above.*** 12mo. 248 pages.

 SEE END OF THIS VOLUME.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

AN
INTRODUCTORY
LATIN BOOK,
INTENDED AS AN
ELEMENTARY DRILL-BOOK,
ON THE
INFLECTIONS AND PRINCIPLES OF THE LANGUAGE,
AND AS AN
INTRODUCTION
TO THE
AUTHOR'S GRAMMAR, READER AND LATIN COMPOSITION.

BY
ALBERT HARKNESS,
Professor in Brown University.

AUTHOR OF "A LATIN GRAMMAR," "A LATIN READER," "A FIRST GREEK BOOK," ETC.



NEW YORK:
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,
549 & 551 BROADWAY.
1876.

59466

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1866, by

ALBERT HARKNESS,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Rhode Island.



P R E F A C E.



THE volume now offered to the public is intended to furnish the pupil his first lessons in Latin. As an Elementary Drill-book, it aims to supply a want long felt in our schools. In no stage of a course of classical study is judicious instruction of more vital importance than in that which deals with the forms and elements of the Latin language. To the beginner, every thing is new, and requires minute and careful illustration. He must at the very outset become so familiar with all the grammatical inflections, with their exact form and force, that he will recognize them with promptness and certainty wherever they occur. He must not lose time in uncertain conjecture, where positive knowledge alone will be of any real value. Improvement on this point is one of the pressing needs of our schools. This volume is intended as a contribution to classical education in aid of this particular work. It aims to lighten the burden of the teacher in elementary drill, and to aid him in grounding his pupils in the first elements of the Latin language.

It is the unmistakable verdict of the class-room, that theory and practice must not be separated in the study of language. The true method of instruction will make ample provision for both. On the one hand, the pupil must, by a vigorous use of the memory, become master of all the grammatical forms and rules; while, on the other hand, he must not be denied the luxury of using the knowledge which he is so laboriously acquiring.

To this just and urgent demand of the class-room; the

author's First Latin Book, published fifteen years since, on the basis of Dr. Arnold's works, owed its origin. For the favor with which it was received, and for the generous interest with which it has so long been regarded, the author desires here to express his sincere thanks to the numerous classical instructors whose fidelity in its use has contributed so largely to its success. In the conviction, however, that it has now done its appointed work, he begs leave to offer them the present volume as its successor.

The great objection to most First Latin Books, that, however excellent they may be in themselves, they are not especially adapted to any particular Grammar, and that they accordingly fill the memory of the pupil with rules and statements which must, as far as possible, be unlearned as soon as he passes to his Grammar, is entirely obviated in this volume. All the grammatical portions of it, even to the numbering of the articles, are introduced in the exact form and language of the author's Grammar. Indeed, the paradigms are not only the same as in the Grammar, but also occupy the same place on the page; so that even the local associations which the beginner so readily forms with the pages of his first book may be transferred directly to the Grammar.

This work is intended to be complete in itself. It comprises a distinct outline of Latin Grammar, Exercises for Double Translation, Suggestions to the Learner, Notes and Vocabularies. As an Introduction to the author's Grammar, Reader and Latin Composition, it discusses and illustrates precisely those points which are deemed most essential as a preparation for the course of study presented in those works.



CONTENTS.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page.
Alphabet	1
Sounds of Letters	2
Exercise I.	3
" II.	4
" III.	5
Syllables	6
Quantity	6
Accentuation	7
Exercise IV.	7

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

Gender	8
Person and Number	9
Cases	9
Declensions	10
First Declension	11
Exercise V.	11
Second Declension	13
Exercise VI.	14
" VII.	16
Third Declension	17
Exercise VIII.	23
" IX.	25
Fourth Declension	26
Exercise X.	27

	Page.
Fifth Declension	28
Exercise XI.	29

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions	30
Exercise XII.	33
Third Declension	35
Exercise XIII.	37
Comparison of Adjectives	38
Exercise XIV.	39
Numeral Adjectives	40
Exercise XV.	42

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns	43
Possessive	44
Demonstrative	44
Relative	45
Interrogative	46
Indefinite	46
Exercise XVI.	47

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

Voices	48
Moods	49
Tenses	50
Numbers	50
Persons	51
Conjugation	51
The Verb Sum	52
Exercise XVII.	56
“ XVIII.	57
“ XIX.	60
First Conjugation	62
Exercise XX.	66

	Page.
Exercise XXI.	67
“ XXII.	69
“ XXIII.	71
“ XXIV.	73
“ XXV.	74
“ XXVI.	75
“ XXVII.	76
Second Conjugation	78
Exercise XXVIII.	82
“ XXIX.	83
“ XXX.	84
“ XXXI.	85
“ XXXII.	86
“ XXXIII.	87
“ XXXIV.	88
Third Conjugation	90
Exercise XXXV.	94
“ XXXVI.	95
“ XXXVII.	96
“ XXXVIII.	97
“ XXXIX.	97
“ XL.	98
“ XLI.	99
Fourth Conjugation	100
Exercise XLII.	104
“ XLIII.	104
“ XLIV.	105
“ XLV.	106
“ XLVI.	107
“ XLVII.	107
“ XLVIII.	108
Verbs in 10	110
Exercise XLIX.	112

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

Section.	
I. Classification of Sentences	114
II. Simple Sentences	115

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

Section.		Page.
I.	Agreement of Nouns	117
	Exercise L.	117
	“ LI.	119
II.	Nominative	120
	Exercise LII.	120
III.	Vocative	121
	Exercise LIII.	121
IV.	Accusative	122
	Exercise LIV.	123
	“ LV.	124
	“ LVI.	125
V.	Dative	126
	Exercise LVII.	127
	“ LVIII.	129
VI.	Genitive	130
	Exercise LIX.	131
	“ LX.	132
VII.	Ablative	133
	Exercise LXI.	135
	“ LXII.	137
	“ LXIII.	138
	“ LXIV.	140
VIII.	Cases with Prepositions	141
	Exercise LXV.	142
	Suggestions to the Learner	143
	Latin-English Vocabulary	147
	English-Latin Vocabulary	157

EXPLANATION OF REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS.

THE numerals refer to articles in this work.

The following abbreviations occur :

abl.	ablative.	n.	neuter.
acc.	accusative.	nom.	nominative.
act.	active.	p.	page.
adv.	adverb.	part.	particle.
conj.	conjunction.	pass.	passive.
dat.	dative.	pers.	person.
f.	feminine.	plur., <i>or</i> pl.	plural.
gen.	genitive.	prep.	preposition.
indef.	indefinite.	rel.	relative.
interrog.	interrogative.	sing.	singular.
m.	masculine.	voc.	vocative.



INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK.

1. **LATIN GRAMMAR** treats of the principles of the Latin language.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.¹

ALPHABET.

2. **THE** Latin alphabet is the same as the English, with the omission of *w*.

3. **Classes of Letters.**—Letters are divided into two classes :

I. *Vowels* a, e, i, o, u, y.

II. *Consonants* :—

1. *Liquids* l, m, n, r.

2. *Spirants* h, s.

3. *Mutes*: 1) *Labials* p, b, f, v.

2) *Palatals* c, g, k, q, j.

3) *Linguals* t, d.

4. *Double Consonants* x, z.

4. **Combinations of Letters.**—We notice here,

1. *Diphthongs*,—combinations of two vowels in one syllable. The most common are *ae*, *oe*, *au*.

2. *Double Consonants*,—*x*=*cs* or *gs* ; *z*=*ds* or *ts*.

3. *Ch*, *ph*, *th*, are best treated, not as combinations of letters, but only as aspirated forms of *c*, *p*, and *t*, as *h* is only a breathing.

¹ Orthography treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

SOUNDS OF LETTERS.

5. Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, two distinct systems are recognized, generally known as the *English* and the *Continental Method*.¹ For the convenience of the instructor, we add a brief outline of each.

I. ENGLISH METHOD.

1. *Sounds of Vowels.*

6. Vowels generally have their *long* or *short* English sounds.

7. **Long Sound.**—Vowels have their long English sounds—*a* as in *fate*, *e* in *mete*, *i* in *pine*, *o* in *note*, *u* in *tube*, *y* in *type*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel:² *se*, *si*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mi'-sy*.

2. In all syllables before a vowel or diphthong: *de'-us*, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di-e'-i*, *ni'-hi-lum*.³

3. In penultimate⁴ and unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *A'-thos*, *O'-thrys*, *do-lo'-ris*. But

1) *A* unaccented has the sound of *a* final in America: *men'-sa*.

8. **Short Sound.**—Vowels have the short English sound—*a* as in *fat*, *e* in *met*, *i* in *pin*, *o* in *not*, *u* in *tub*, *y* in *myth*—in the following situations:

¹ Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the continent of Europe has its own method.

² Some give to *i* in both syllables of *tibi* and *sibi* the short sound.

³ In these rules, no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing: hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel: for the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

⁴ Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant: *a'-mat*, *a'-met*, *rex'-it*, *sol*, *con'-sul*, *Te'-thys*; except *post*, *es final*, and *os final* in plural cases: *res*, *di'-es*, *hos*, *a'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants except a mute with *l* or *r* (7, 3): *rex'-it*, *bel'-lum*, *rex'-e'-runt*, *bel'-lo'-rum*.

3. In all accented syllables before one or more consonants, except the penultimate: *dom'-i-nus*, *pat'-ri-bus*. But

1) *A*, *e*, or *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) followed by *e*, *i*, or *y*, before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es*, *a'-cri-a*, *me'-re-o*, *do'-ce-o*.

2) *U*, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus*, *sa-lu'-bri-tas*.

2. Sounds of Diphthongs.

9. *Ae* and *oe* are pronounced like *e*:

1) long: *Cae'-sar* (*Ce'-sar*), *Oe'-ta* (*E'-ta*).

2) short: *Daed'-ă-lus* (*Ded'-a-lus*), *Oed'-i-pus*.

Au as in author: *au'-rum*.

Eu . . neuter: *neu'-ter*.¹

EXERCISE I.

Exercise I.

Give the sounds of the Vowels and Diphthongs in the following words.

1. *Men'-sam*,² *men'-sas*, *men'-sis*, *men'-sae*,³ *men-sa'-rum*.⁴
2. *Ho'-ram*,⁵ *ho'-ras*, *ho'-ris*, *ho'-rae*,⁶ *ho-ra'-rum*.⁷ 3. *Scho'-la*,⁸ *scho'-lam*, *scho'-las*, *scho'-lis*, *scho'-lae*, *scho-la'-rum*.
4. *Co-ro'-na*,⁸ *co-ro'-nam*, *co-ro'-nas*, *co-ro'-nis*, *co-ro'-nae*.⁹

¹ *Ei* and *oi* are seldom diphthongs; but, when so used, they have the long sound of *i*: *hei*, *cui*.

² 8, 2; 8, 1.

⁵ 7, 3; 8, 1.

⁶ 7, 3; 7, 3, 1).

³ 8, 2; 9; 7, 1.

⁶ 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.

⁹ 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.

⁴ 8, 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.

⁷ 7, 3; 8, 1.

3. *Sounds of Consonants.*

10. The consonants are pronounced in general as in English; but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. **C, G, S, T, and X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus,

1. *C* and *g* are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e, i, y, ae,* and *oe*; and *hard* in other situations: *cc'-do* (sedo), *ci'-vis*, *Cy'-rus*, *cae'-do*, *coe'-na*, *a'-ge* (a-je), *a'-gi*; *ca'-do* (ka'do), *co'-go*, *cum*, *Ga'-des*.

2. *S* generally has its regular English sound as in *son*, thus: *sa'-cer*, *so'-ror*, *si'-dus*. But

1) *S* *final* after *e, ae, au, b, m, n, r,* is pronounced like *z*: *spes*, *praes*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hi'-ems*, *mons*, *pars*.

3. *T* has its regular English sound as in *time*: *ti'-mor*, *to'-tus*.

4. *X* has generally its regular English sound like *ks*: *rex'-i* (rek'-si), *ux'-or* (uk'-sor).

12. **C, S, T, and X—Aspirated.**—Before *i*, preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, *c, s, t,* and *x* are aspirated, — *c, s,* and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, *x* that of *ksh*: *so'-ci-us* (so'-she-us), *Al'-si-um* (Al'-she-um), *ar'-ti-um* (ar'-she-um); *anx'-i-us* (ank'-she-us). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo*, preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (ca-du'-she-us), *Sic'-y-on* (Sish'-e-on).

13. **Silent Consonants.**—An initial consonant, with or without the aspirate *h*, is sometimes silent: *Cne'-us* (Ne'-us).

EXERCISE II.

Give the sounds of the Letters in the following words.

1. *Ci'-vis*,¹ *civ'-i-um*, *civ'-i-bus*. 2. *Car'-men*,² *car'-mi-nis*, *car'-mi-ne*.³ 3. *Rex*,⁴ *re'-gis*,⁵ *re'-gi*, *re'-gum*.⁵ 4. *Ca'-put*,⁶ *cap'-i-tis*, *cap'-i-tum*. 5. *A'-ci-em*,⁷ *a'-ci-e*, *a'-ci-es*.⁸ 6. *Ars*,⁸ *ar'-tis*, *ar'-tes*,⁸ *ar'-ti-um*.⁹

¹ 11, 1 and 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.

² 11, 1; 8, 2; 8, 1.

³ 8, 3; 7, 3; 7, 1.

⁴ 11, 4.

⁶ 11, 1; 7, 3; 8, 1.

⁶ 11, 1, and 3.

⁷ 8, 3, 1); 12; 8, 1.

⁸ 11, 2, 1).

⁹ 12.

II. CONTINENTAL METHOD.¹

1. *Sounds of Vowels.*

14. Each vowel has in the main one uniform sound;² but the length or duration of the sound depends upon the quantity of the vowel. See 20.

The vowel-sounds are as follows :

<i>a</i>	like	ä	in	father :	e.g.,	<i>a'-ra.</i>
<i>e</i>	"	ā	made :	"	<i>plé'-bes.</i>	
<i>i</i>	"	ē	me :	"	<i>i'-ri.</i>	
<i>o</i>	"	ō	no :	"	<i>o'-ro.</i>	
<i>u</i>	"	ô	do :	"	<i>u'-num.</i>	
<i>y</i>	"	ē	me ;	"	<i>Ny'-sa.</i>	

2. *Sounds of Diphthongs.*

15. *Ae* and *oe* like *a* in made : e.g., *ae'-tas, coe'-lum.*

au " *ou* " out : " *au'-rum.*³

3. *Sounds of Consonants.*

16. The pronunciation of the consonants is similar to that of the English method ; but it varies somewhat in different countries.

EXERCISE III.

Give the sounds of the Letters in the following words, according to the Continental Method.

1. Hō'-rā, hō'-rām, hō'-rās, hō'-rīs, hō'-rae, hō-rā'-rūm.
2. Glō'-rī-ā, glō'-rī-ām, glō'-rī-ae. 3. Dō'-nūm, dō'-nī, dō'-

¹ If the *English Method* is adopted as the standard in the school, this outline of the *Continental Method* should be omitted.

² These sounds sometimes undergo slight modifications in uniting with the various consonants.

³ In other combinations, the two vowels are generally pronounced separately ; but *ei* and *eu* occur as diphthongs, with nearly the same sound as in English.

nē, dō'-nă, dō-nō'-rŭm, dō'-nis. 4. Cī'-vīs, cī'-vī, cī'-vēm, cī'-vēs, cīv'-ī-ŭm, cīv'-ī-bŭs.

SYLLABLES.

17. In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus the Latin words *more*, *vice*, *acute*, and *persuade* are pronounced, not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel-sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus: *mo'-re*, *vi'-ce*, *a-cu'-te*, *per-sua'-de*.

QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are, in quantity or length, either long, short, or common.¹

21. **Long.**—A syllable is long in quantity,

1. If it contains a diphthong: *haec*.

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex*, *mons*.

22. **Short.**—A syllable is short if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *dī'-es*, *vi'-ae*, *nī'-hil*.²

23. **Common.**—A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally³ short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a'-gri*.

24. The signs $\bar{}$, $\acute{}$, \circ, denote respectively that the syllables over which they are placed are long, short, or common: *ā-grō-rŭm*.⁴

¹ Common; i.e., sometimes long, and sometimes short.

² No account is taken of the breathing *h*. See 7, 2, note 3.

³ A vowel is said to be *naturally* short when it is short in its own nature; i.e., in itself, without reference to its position.

⁴ By referring to 14, it will be seen, that, in the Continental Method, quantity and sound coincide with each other: a vowel long in quantity is long in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is short in sound. But, by referring to 7 and 8, it will be seen, that, in the English Method, the quantity of a vowel does not at all affect its sound, except in determining the accent (26). Hence, in this method, a vowel long in quantity is often short in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is often long in sound. Thus, in *rēx*, *ŭrbs*, *ārs*, *sōl*, the vowels are all long in quantity;

ACCENTUATION.

I. PRIMARY ACCENT.

25. Monosyllables are treated as accented syllables:
mons, nos.

26. Other words are accented as follows:¹

1. *Words of two syllables* — always on the first: *men'-sa.*

2. *Words of more than two syllables* — on the *penult*² if that is long in quantity, otherwise on the *antepenult*:²
ho-nō'-ris, con'-sū-lis.

II. SECONDARY ACCENTS.

27. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent, — on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity; otherwise on the third:
mon'-u-e'-runt, mon'-u-e-ra'-mus, in-stau'-ra-ve'-runt.

28. In the same way, a third accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the second accent: *hon'-o-rif'-i-cen-tis'-sī-mus.*

EXERCISE IV.

Accent and pronounce the following Words.

1. Cōrōnă,³ cōrōnæ, cōrōnārūm.⁴ 2. Gemmae,⁵ gemmām, gemmārūm. 3. Săpientiae,⁶ āmicītiaē, justītiaē, glōriaē.⁷

but by 8, 1, they all have the short English sounds: while in *ăvĕ, mŭrĕ*, the vowels are all short in quantity; but by 7, 1, and 3, they all have the long English sounds. Hence, in pronouncing according to the English Method, determine the place of the accent by the quantity (according to 26), and then determine the sounds of the letters irrespective of quantity (according to 7-12).

¹ In the subsequent pages, the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.

² Penult, last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

³ 26, 2; 7, 3, 1).

⁵ 11, 1; 26, 1.

⁷ 11, 1; 8, 3, 1).

⁴ 26, 2; 27.

⁶ 27; 8, 3, 1); 12.

4. Săpientiām, ămīcītiām, justītiām, glōriām. 5. Săpientiă, ămīcītiă, justītiă, glōriă.

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

29. ETYMOLOGY treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

30. The Parts of Speech¹ are — *Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

31. A Noun, or Substantive, is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cicĕro*, Cicero; *Rōma*, Rome; *puer*, boy; *dōmus*, house.

1. A **Proper Noun** is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cicĕro*, *Rōma*.

2. A **Common Noun** is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vir*, man; *ĕquus*, horse.

32. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case.*

GENDER.

33. There are three genders,² — *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

¹ Thus in Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*.

² In English, *Gender* denotes *sex*. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males*; feminine nouns, *females*; and *neuter* nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female*. In Latin, however, this natural distinction

34. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

35. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

I. MASCULINES.

1. Names of *Males*: *Cicero*; *vir*, man; *rex*, king.

2. Names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months*: *Rhēnus*, Rhine; *Nōtus*, south wind; *Aprīlis*, April.

II. FEMININE.

1. Names of *Females*: *mulier*, woman; *leaena*, lioness.

2. Names of *Countries*, *Towns*, *Islands*, and *Trees*: *Aegyptus*, Egypt; *Rōma*, Rome; *Dēlos*, Delos; *pīrus*, pear-tree.

PERSON AND NUMBER.

37. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one, the plural more than one.

CASES.

38. The Latin has six cases:¹

Names.	English Equivalents.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with <i>from</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>with</i> .

of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females*; while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction, according to grammatical rules.

¹ The *case* of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words; as, *John's book*. Here the *possessive case* (*John's*) shows that John sustains to the book the relation of *possessor*.

1. **Oblique Cases.**—In distinction from the Nominative and Vocative (*casus recti*, right cases), the other cases are called *oblique* (*casus obliqui*).

2. **Case-Endings.**—In form, the several cases are, in general, distinguished from each other by certain terminations called *case-endings*: Nom. *mensa*, Gen. *mensae*, &c.

3. **Cases alike.**—But certain cases are not distinguished in form. Thus,

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative*, in *neuters*, are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike in all nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension (45).

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

DECLENSIONS.

39. The formation of the several cases is called *Declension*.

40. **Five Declensions.**—In Latin, there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the following

Genitive Endings.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	i,	is,	ūs,	eī. ¹

41. **Stem and Endings.**—In any noun, of whatever declension,

1. The stem² may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

2. The several cases may be formed by adding to this stem the case-endings.

¹ See 119, 1.

² The *stem* is the basis of the word, or the part to which the several endings are added to form the various cases. Thus in the forms, *mensā*, *mensae*, *mensām*, *mensis*, &c., given under 42, it will be observed that *mens* remains unchanged; and that, by the addition of the endings, *a*, *ae*, *am*, *is*, &c., to it, the several cases are formed. Here *mens* is the *stem*; and *a*, *ae*, *am*, *is*, &c., are the *case-endings*.

FIRST DECLENSION.

42. Nouns of the first declension end in

ă and ě, — *feminine*; ās and ēs, — *masculine*.¹

But pure Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.

Nom. mensă,	a table,	ă
Gen. mensae,	of a table,	ae
Dat. mensae,	to, for, a table,	ae
Acc. mensăm,	a table,	ăm
Voc. mensă,	O table,	ă
Abl. mensă,	with, from, by, a table,	ă

PLURAL.

Nom. mensae,	tables,	ae
Gen. mensarūm,	of tables,	ărūm
Dat. mensis,	to, for, tables,	is
Acc. mensās,	tables,	ās
Voc. mensae,	O tables,	ae
Abl. mensis,	with, from, by, tables,	is.

1. **Case-Endings.** — From an inspection of this example, it will be seen that the several cases are distinguished from each other by the case-endings placed on the right.

2. **Examples for Practice.** — With these endings decline:

Ala, wing; *ăqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortūna*, fortune; *porta*, gate; *victōria*, victory.

EXERCISE V. 5 Five Fünf

I. Vocabulary.

Amicitia,	ae, ² f. ³	friendship.
Cōrōnă,	ae, f.	crown.

¹ That is, nouns of this declension in *a* and *e* are feminine, and those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

² The ending *ae* is the case-ending of the Genitive: *amicitia*; Gen., *amicitiae*.

³ Gender is indicated in the vocabularies by *m.* for *masculine*, *f.* for *feminine*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

Gemmă	ae, f.	gem.
Glōriă	ae, f.	glory.
Hōră	ae, f.	hour.
Justitiă	ae, f.	justice.
Săpientiă	ae, f.	wisdom.
Schölă	ae, f.	school.

II. Translate into English.

1. Corōnă,¹ corōnā, corōnae,² corōnam, coronārum, corōnis, corōnas. 2. Gemmă, gemmā, gemmae, gemmam, gemmārum, gemmis, gemmas. 3. Sapientiă, amicitia, justitiă, gloriă. 4. Sapientiam, amicitiam, justitiam, gloriam. 5. Sapientiā, amicitia, justitiā, gloriā. 6. Scholārum, horārum. 7. Scholis, horis. 8. Scholas, horas.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Friendship, friendships. 2. Of³ friendship, of friendships. 3. To friendship, to friendships. 4. By friendship, by friendships. 5. Justice, by justice, of justice, to justice. 6. Wisdom, glory. 7. With wisdom, with glory. 8. To wisdom, to glory. 9. Of wisdom, of glory. 10. Of a⁴ crown, of a gem. 11. Crowns, gems. 12. With the⁴ crowns, with the gems. 13. Of crowns, of gems.

¹ As the Latin has no article, a noun may, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated (1) without the article; as, *corōna*, crown; (2) with the indefinite article *a* or *an*; as, *corōna*, a crown; (3) with the definite article *the*; as, *corōna*, the crown.

² When the same Latin form may be found in two or more cases, the pupil is expected to give the meaning for each case. Thus *corōnae* may be in the Genitive or Dative Singular, or in the Nominative or Vocative Plural.

³ The pupil will observe that the English prepositions, *of*, *to*, *by*, may be rendered into Latin by simply changing the ending of the word. Thus *friendship*, *amicitia*; *of friendship*, *amicitiae*.

⁴ The pupil will remember that the English articles, *a*, *an*, and *the*, are not to be rendered into Latin at all. *Crown*, *a crown*, and *the crown*, are all rendered into Latin by the same word.

SECOND DECLENSION.

45. Nouns of the second declension end in

ēr, ir, ūs, os, — *masculine*; **ŭm, on**, — *neuter*.

But pure Latin nouns end only in *er, ir, us, um*, and are declined as follows:

Servus, slave. Puer, boy. Ager, field. Templum, temple.

SINGULAR.

<i>N. servŭs</i>	<i>puēr</i>	<i>āgēr</i>	<i>templŭm</i>
<i>G. servī</i>	<i>puērī</i>	<i>āgrī</i>	<i>templī</i>
<i>D. servō</i>	<i>puērō</i>	<i>āgrō</i>	<i>templō</i>
<i>A. servŭm</i>	<i>puērŭm</i>	<i>āgrŭm</i>	<i>templŭm</i>
<i>V. servē</i>	<i>puēr</i>	<i>āgēr</i>	<i>templŭm</i>
<i>A. servō</i>	<i>puērō</i>	<i>āgrō</i>	<i>templō</i>

PLURAL.

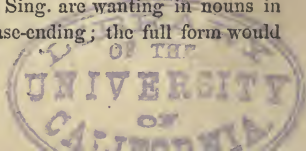
<i>N. servī</i>	<i>puērī</i>	<i>āgrī</i>	<i>templă</i>
<i>G. servōrŭm</i>	<i>puērōrŭm</i>	<i>āgrōrŭm</i>	<i>templōrŭm</i>
<i>D. servīs</i>	<i>puērīs</i>	<i>āgrīs</i>	<i>templīs</i>
<i>A. servōs</i>	<i>puērōs</i>	<i>āgrōs</i>	<i>templă</i>
<i>V. servī</i>	<i>puērī</i>	<i>āgrī</i>	<i>templă</i>
<i>A. servīs.</i>	<i>puērīs.</i>	<i>āgrīs.</i>	<i>templīs.</i>

1. **Case-Endings.** — From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen that they are declined with the following

Case-endings.

1. ūs.	2. ēr.	3. ŭm.
SINGULAR.		
<i>N. ūs</i>	— ¹	<i>ŭm</i>
<i>G. ī</i>	<i>ī</i>	<i>ī</i>
<i>D. ō</i>	<i>ō</i>	<i>ō</i>
<i>A. ŭm</i>	<i>ŭm</i>	<i>ŭm</i>
<i>V. ē</i>	— ¹	<i>ŭm</i>
<i>A. ō</i>	<i>ō</i>	<i>ō</i>

¹ The endings for the Nom. and Voc. Sing. are wanting in nouns in *er*: thus *puer* is the stem without any case-ending; the full form would be *puērŭs*.



	PLURAL.	
N. ī	ī	ă
G. ōrŭm	ōrŭm	ōrŭm
D. īs	īs	īs
A. ōs	ōs	ă
V. ī	ī	ă
A. īs.	īs.	īs.

2. **Examples for Practice.** — Like *SERVUS*: *annus*, year; *dominus*, master. — Like *PUER*: *gēner*, son-in-law; *sōcer*, father-in-law. — Like *AGER*: *fāber*, artisan; *magister*, master. — Like *TEMPLUM*: *bellum*, war; *regnum*, kingdom.

3. **Paradigms.** — Observe

1) That *puer* differs in declension from *servus* only in dropping the endings *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc.: Nom. *puer* for *puērus*, Voc. *puer* for *puēre*.

2) That *ager* differs from *puer* only in dropping *e* before *r*.

3) That *templum*, as a neuter noun, has the Nom., Accus., and Voc. alike, ending in the plural in *a*. See 38, 3.

EXERCISE VI.

I. Vocabulary.

Dōnŭm, ī, n.	gift.
Gēnēr, gēnērī, m.	son-in-law.
Lībēr, librī, m.	book.
Ocŭlŭs, ī, m.	eye.
Praeceptŭm, ī, n.	rule, precept.
Sōcēr, sōcērī, m.	father-in-law.
Tŷrannŭs, ī, m.	tyrant.
Verbŭm, ī, n.	word.

II. Translate into English.

1. Ocŭlus, ocŭli, ocŭlo, ocŭlum, ocŭle, oculōrum, ocŭlis, ocŭlos. 2. Socer, socērī, socĕro, socĕrum, socerōrum, socĕris, socĕros. 3. Servi, tyranni. 4. Puĕri, genĕri. 5. Agri, libri. 6. Templi, doni. 7. Servo, tyranno. 8. Puĕrum, genĕrum. 9. Agrōrum, librōrum. 10. Tempa, dona. 11. Servum, servos. 12. Genĕri, generōrum. 13. Agri, agrō-

run. 14. *Dono, donis.* 15. *Verbum, praeceptum.* 16. *Verbi, praecepti.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The slave, the slaves. 2. For the slave, for the slaves. 3. Of the slave, of the slaves. 4. Of the father-in-law, of the son-in-law. 5. Of the fathers-in-law, of the sons-in-law. 6. For the fathers-in-law, for the sons-in-law. 7. The boy, the field. 8. The boys, the fields. 9. The gift, the gifts. 10. With the gift, with the gifts. 11. The tyrant, the boy, the book, the precept. 12. Of the tyrant, of the boy, of the book, of the precept.

SECOND DECLENSION — CONTINUED.

RULE II. — Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE: ¹

Cluilius rex mōrītur, Cluilius the king dies. Liv. *Urbes Carthāgo atque Nūmantia, the cities Carthage and Numantia.* Cic.

I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING.

In parsing a Noun, Adjective, or Pronoun,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Decline ² it.
3. Give its Gender, Number, Case, &c.
4. Give its Syntax, ³ and the Rule for it.

¹ A noun or pronoun used to explain or identify another noun or pronoun, denoting the same person or thing, is called an *appositive*; as, *Cluilius rex*, Cluilius the king. Here *rex*, the king, is the appositive, showing the rank or office of Cluilius, — *Cluilius the king*. The noun or pronoun to which the appositive is added — *Cluilius* in the example — is called the *subject* of the appositive.

² Adjectives in the Comparative or in the Superlative degree (160) should also be compared (162).

³ By the *Syntax* of a word is meant the Grammatical construction of it. Thus we give the Syntax of *regīna*, under the Model, by stating that it is in apposition with its subject, *Artemisia*.

MODEL.

Artēmisiā rēginā, *Artemisia the queen.*

Regina is a noun (31) of the First Declension (42), as it has *ae* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *regin* (41). Singular: *regina*, *reginae*, *reginae*, *reginam*, *reginā*, *reginā*. Plural: *reginae*, *reginārum*, *reginis*, *reginas*, *reginae*, *reginis*. It is of the Feminine gender, as the names of females are feminine by 35, II. 1. It is in the Nominative Singular, in apposition with its subject *Artemisia*, with which it agrees in *case*, according to Rule II.: "An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE."

EXERCISE VII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Caiūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Caius</i> , a proper name.
Filiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>daughter.</i>
Hastā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>spear.</i>
Pisistrātūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Pisistratus</i> , Tyrant of Athens.
Rāmūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>branch.</i>
Rēginā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>queen.</i>
Tulliā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Tullia</i> , a proper name.
Victōria, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Victoria</i> , Queen of England.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Ramus, hastā. 2. Rami, hastae. 3. Ramo, hastae. 4. Ramum, hastam. 5. Ramo, hastā. 6. Ramōrum, hastārum. 7. Ramis, hastis. 8. Ramos, hastas. 9. Tyranni, tyrannōrum. 10. Verbum, verba. 11. Verbo, verbis. 12. Templum, templa. 13. Templi, templōrum. 14. Pisistrātus tyrannus.¹ 15. Pisistrāti tyranni. 16. Pisistrāto tyranno. 17. Tulliā filiā. 18. Tulliae filiae. 19. Tulliam filiam.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The tyrant, the crown. 2. The tyrants, the crowns.

¹ *Tyrannus* is an appositive, in the Nominative, in agreement with its subject, *Pisistrātus*, according to Rule II. 363.

3. Of the tyrant, of the crown. 4. Of the tyrants, of the crowns. 5. To the tyrant, to the crown. 6. To the tyrants, to the crowns. 7. The book, the books. 8. With the book, with the books. 9. Of Pisistratus, for Pisistratus. 10. Of the queen, for the queen. 11. Caius the slave.¹ 12. Of Caius the slave. 13. For Caius the slave. 14. Victoria the queen. 15. For Victoria the queen. 16. Of Victoria the queen.

THIRD DECLENSION.

48. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.

I. MASCULINE ENDINGS:²

o, or, os, er, es *increasing in the genitive.*

II. FEMININE ENDINGS:

as, is, ys, x, es *not increasing in the genitive; s preceded by a consonant.*

III. NEUTER ENDINGS:

a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.

49. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes:

I. Nouns which have a case-ending in the Nominative Singular. These all end in *e, s, or æ.*

II. Nouns which have no case-ending in the Nominative Singular.

In Class II., the Nom. Sing. is either the same as the stem, or is formed from it by dropping or changing one or more letters of the stem: *consul*, Gen. *consūlis*; stem, *consul*, a *consul*: *leo*, *leōnis*; stem, *leon* (Nom. drops n), lion: *carmen*, *carminis*; stem, *carmin* (Nom. changes in to en), song.

¹ See Rule II. 363.

² That is, nouns with these endings are masculine.

50. CLASS I.—WITH NOMINATIVE ENDING.

I. Nouns in **es, is, s** *impure*,¹ and **x**:—*with stem unchanged in Nominative.*

Nubes, <i>f.</i> <i>cloud.</i>	Avis, <i>f.</i> <i>bird.</i>	Urbs, <i>f.</i> <i>city.</i>	Rex, <i>m.</i> <i>king.</i>
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------	---------------------------------	--------------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. nūbēs	āvīs	urbs	rex ²
G. nubīs	avīs	urbīs	rēgīs
D. nubī	avī	urbī	regī
A. nubēm	avēm	urbēm	regēm
V. nubēs	avīs	urbs	rex
A. nubē	avē	urbē	regē

PLURAL.

N. nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
G. nubīūm	aviūm	urbīūm	regūm
D. nubībūs	avībūs	urbībūs	regībūs
A. nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
V. nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
A. nubībūs.	avībūs.	urbībūs.	regībūs.

II. Nouns in **es, is, s** *impure*, and **x**:—*with stem changed in Nominative.*

Miles, <i>m.</i> <i>soldier.</i>	Lapis, <i>m.</i> <i>stone.</i>	Ars, <i>f.</i> <i>art.</i>	Judex, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> <i>judge.</i>
-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-------------------------------	---

SINGULAR.

N. milēs	lāpīs	ars	jūdex ²
G. militīs	lapīdīs	artīs	judicīs
D. militī	lapīdī	artī	judicī
A. militēm	lapīdēm	artēm	judicēm
V. milēs	lapīs	ars	judex
A. militē	lapīdē	artē	judicē

PLURAL.

N. militēs	lapīdēs	artēs	judicēs
G. militūm	lapīdūm	artiūm	judicūm

¹ *Impure*; i.e., preceded by a consonant.

² X in rex = *gs*; *g* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nom. ending: but in judex, x = *cs*; *c* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nom. ending.

<i>D.</i> milit ibūs	lapid ibūs	art ibūs	judic ibūs
<i>A.</i> milit ēs	lapid ēs	art ēs	judic ēs
<i>V.</i> milit ēs	lapid ēs	art ēs	judic ēs
<i>A.</i> milit ibūs.	lapid ibūs.	art ibūs.	judic ibūs.

III. Nouns in **as, os, us**, and **e**:—*those in as, os, and us with stem changed, those in e with stem unchanged.*

Civitas, <i>f.</i>	Nepos, <i>m.</i>	Virtus, <i>f.</i>	Mare, <i>n.</i>
<i>'state.</i>	<i>grandson.</i>	<i>virtue.</i>	<i>sea.</i>

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> civitās	nepōs	virtūs	mārē
<i>G.</i> civitatīs	nepōtīs	virtūtīs	marīs
<i>D.</i> civitatī	nepōtī	virtūtī	marī
<i>A.</i> civitatēm	nepōtēm	virtutēm	marē
<i>V.</i> civitās	nepōs	virtūs	marē
<i>A.</i> civitatē	nepōtē	virtutē	marī ²

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> civitatēs	nepōtēs	virtutēs	marīā
<i>G.</i> civitatū ¹	nepōtū	virtutū	marīū
<i>D.</i> civitatibūs	nepotibūs	virtutibūs	maribūs
<i>A.</i> civitatēs	nepōtēs	virtutēs	marīā
<i>V.</i> civitatēs	nepōtēs	virtutēs	marīā
<i>A.</i> civitatibūs.	nepotibūs.	virtutibūs.	maribūs.

51. CLASS II.—WITHOUT NOMINATIVE ENDING.

I. Nouns in **l** and **r**:—*with stem unchanged in Nominative.*

Sol, <i>m.</i>	Consul, <i>m.</i>	Passer, <i>m.</i>	Vultur, <i>m.</i>
<i>sun.</i>	<i>consul.</i>	<i>sparrow.</i>	<i>vulture.</i>

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> sōl	consul	passēr	vultūr
<i>G.</i> sōlīs	consulīs	passērīs	vultūrīs
<i>D.</i> sōlī	consulī	passērī	vultūrī
<i>A.</i> sōlēm	consulēm	passērēm	vultūrēm
<i>V.</i> sōl	consul	passēr	vultūr
<i>A.</i> sōlē	consulē	passērē	vultūrē

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> sōlēs	consulēs	passērēs	vultūrēs
<i>G.</i>	consulū	passērū	vultūrū
<i>D.</i> sōlibūs	consulibūs	passeribūs	vulturibūs

¹ Sometimes *civitatium*.

² Sometimes *mare* in poetry.

A. sölēs	consülēs	passērēs	vultūrēs
V. sölēs	consülēs	passērēs	vultūrēs
A. sölībūs.	consulībūs.	passerībūs.	vulturībūs.

II. Nouns in **o** and **r**:—*with stem changed in Nominative.*

Leo, <i>m.</i>	Virgo, <i>f.</i>	Pater, <i>m.</i>	Pastor, <i>m.</i>
<i>lion.</i>	<i>maiden.</i>	<i>father.</i>	<i>shepherd.</i>

SINGULAR.

N. leo	virgo	pätër	pastör
G. leönīs	virginīs	pätërīs	pastörīs
D. leönī	virginī	patrī	pastörī
A. leönēm	virginēm	patrēm	pastörēm
V. leo	virgo	patër	pastör
A. leöně	virgině	patrě	pastörě

PLURAL.

N. leönēs	virginēs	patrēs	pastörēs
G. leönūm	virginūm	patrūm	pastörūm
D. leonībūs	virginībūs	patrībūs	pastorībūs
A. leönēs	virginēs	patrēs	pastörēs
V. leönēs	virginēs	patrēs	pastörēs
A. leonībūs.	virginībūs.	patrībūs.	pastorībūs.

III. Nouns in **en**, **us**, and **ut**:—*with stem changed in Nominative.*

Carmen, <i>n.</i>	Opus, <i>n.</i>	Corpus, <i>n.</i>	Capüt, <i>n.</i>
<i>song.</i>	<i>work.</i>	<i>body.</i>	<i>head.</i>

SINGULAR.

N. carmën	öpüs	corpüs	cäpüt
G. carminīs	opërīs	corpörīs	capütīs
D. carminī	opërī	corpörī	capütī
A. carmën	öpüs	corpüs	capüt
V. carmën	öpüs	corpüs	capüt
A. carmině	opërě	corpörě	capütě

PLURAL.

N. carmină	opëră	corpöră	capitä
G. carminūm	opërūm	corpörūm	capitūm
D. carminībūs	operībūs	corporībūs	capitībūs
A. carmină	opëră	corpöră	capitä
V. carmină	opëră	corpöră	capitä
A. carminībūs.	operībūs.	corporībūs.	capitībūs.

52. **Case-Endings.**—From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen,

1. That the nouns belonging to Class II. differ from those of Class I. only in taking no case-ending in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.

2. That all nouns of both classes are declined with the following

Case-Endings.

SINGULAR.

Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> s ¹ (es, is) ——— ²	ě ——— ²
<i>Gen.</i> ěs	ěs
<i>Dat.</i> ě	ě
<i>Acc.</i> ěm (ěm) ³	like <i>Nom.</i>
<i>Voc.</i> like <i>Nom.</i>	“ “
<i>Abl.</i> ě, ě	ě, ě

PLURAL.

Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> ěs	ě, ě
<i>Gen.</i> ěm, ěm	ěm, ěm
<i>Dat.</i> ěbŭs	ěbŭs
<i>Acc.</i> ěs	ě, ě
<i>Voc.</i> ěs	ě, ě
<i>Abl.</i> ěbŭs.	ěbŭs.

53. **Declension.**—To apply these endings in declension, we must know, besides the Nominative Singular,

1. *The Gender*, as that shows which set of endings must be used.

2. *The Genitive Singular* (or some oblique case), as that contains the *stem* (41) to which these endings must be added.

¹ In nouns in *x* (= *cs* or *gs*), *s* is the case-ending, and the *c* or *g* belongs to the stem.

² The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting, as in all nouns of Class II.

³ The enclosed endings are less common than the others.

54. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE:

Class I.

Rūpes,	Gen. rupis, f.	rock;	hospes,	Gen. hospītis, m.	guest.
vestis,	vestis, f.	garment;	cuspis,	cuspidis, f.	spear.
trabs,	trābis, f.	beam;	mons,	montis, m.	mountain.
lex,	lēgis, f.	law;	āpex,	apīcis, m.	summit.
libertas,	libertātis, f.	liberty;	sālus,	salūtis, f.	safety.
sedile,	sedilis, n.	seat;			

Class II.

Exsul,	Gen. exsūlis, m. and f.	exile;	dōlor,	Gen. dolōris, m.	pain.
actio,	actiōnis, f.	action;	imāgo,	imaginis, f.	image.
anser,	ansēris, m.	goose;	frāter,	fratris, m.	brother.
nōmen,	nomīnis, n.	name;	tempus,	tempōris, n.	time.

RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:¹

Cātōnis orātiōnes, *Cato's orations*. Cic. *Castra hostium*, *the camp of the enemy*. Liv. *Mors Hāmīlcāris*, *the death of Hamilcar*. Liv.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Cātōnis orātiōnēs, *Cato's orations*.

Cātōnis is a proper noun, as it is the name of a person (31, 1). It is of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (40); of Class II., as it has no Nominative Ending (49, II. and 51, II.): STEM, *Cātōn* (41); Nom. *Cato* (*n* dropped, 49, II.). Singu-

¹ The Appositive (363, p. 15) and this qualifying Genitive resemble each other in the fact that they both qualify the meaning of another noun: *Cluilius rex*, *Cluilius the king*; *Cātōnis oratiōnes*, *Cato's orations*, or the orations of Cato. Here the Appositive *rex* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of *Cluilius* by showing *what* *Cluilius* is meant, — *Cluilius the king*. In a similar manner, the Genitive *Cātōnis* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of *oratiōnes* by showing *what* orations are meant, — *the orations of Cato*. Yet the Appositive and the Genitive are readily distinguished by the fact that the former qualifies a noun denoting the *same* person or

lar:¹ *Cato, Catōnis, Catōni, Catōnem, Cato, Catōne*. It is of the Masculine gender, as the names of males are masculine by 35, I. 1. It is in the Genitive Singular, depending upon *orātiōnes*, according to Rule XVI.: “Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive.”

THIRD DECLENSION — CONTINUED. — CLASS I.²

EXERCISE VIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Civīs, civīs, m. and f.</i>	<i>citizen.</i>
<i>Lex, lēgis, f.</i>	<i>law.</i>
<i>Mors, mortīs, f.</i>	<i>death.</i>
<i>Pax, pācis, f.</i>	<i>peace.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Nubis, nubium.* 2. *Nubem, nubes.* 3. *Avis, aves.*
 4. *Avi, avibus.* 5. *Urbs, urbes.* 6. *Urbi, urbibus.* 7.
Rex, reges. 8. *Regis, regum.* 9. *Nubēs, milēs.* 10. *Nu-*
bis, militis. 11. *Nubem, militem.* 12. *Rex, judex.* 13.
Regis, judicis. 14. *Reges, judices.* 15. *Civitas, civitates.*
 16. *Virtus, virtutes.* 17. *Mors regis.*³ 18. *Morte regis.*
 19. *Mortes regum.* 20. *Virtus judicis.* 21. *Pacis gloriā.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The citizen, to the citizen, of the citizen, of citizens,
 for citizens. 2. A cloud, clouds, of a cloud, of clouds, with
 a cloud, with clouds. 3. A king, a law. 4. Kings, laws.

thing as itself, while the Genitive qualifies a noun denoting a *different* person or thing. Thus, in the examples above, *Cluilius* and the Appositive *rex* denote the *same* person; while *orātiōnes* and the Genitive *Catōnis* denote entirely *different* objects.

¹ As *Cato* is the name of a person, the Plural is seldom used.

² This exercise furnishes practice in the declension of nouns belonging to Class I. of the Third Declension. See 50.

³ *Regis* is in the Genitive, and qualifies the meaning of *mors*, according to Rule XVI. 395.

5. Of the king, of the law. 6. Of the kings, of the laws.
 7. To the king, to the law. 8. To the kings, to the laws.
 9. The law of the state.¹ 10. The laws of the state.

THIRD DECLENSION — CONTINUED. — CLASS II.
 PREPOSITIONS.

RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions.²

Ad āmicū scripsi, I have written to a friend. Cic. In cūriam, into the senate-house. Liv. In Itāliā,³ in Italy. Nep. Pro castris, before the camp.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Ad āmicū, To a friend.

Amicū is a noun (31) of the Second Declension (45), as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *amic* (41). Singular: *amicus*, *amici*, *amico*, *amicum*, *amice*, *amico*. Plural: *amici*, *amicorum*, *amicis*, *amicos*, *amici*, *amicis*. It is of the Masculine gender by 45, is in the Accusative Singular, and is used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII.: "The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions." The Accusative is used with *ad*.

¹ The Latin word for *of the state* will be in the Genitive, according to Rule XVI. 395.

² The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other: *in Italia esse*, to be in Italy; *ante me*, before me. Here *in* and *ante* are prepositions. In the Vocabularies, each preposition, as it occurs, will be marked as such; and the case which may be used with it will be specified. It has not been thought advisable at this early stage of the course to burden the memory of the learner with a list of prepositions and their cases.

³ Here the Ablative *Italia* is used with *in*; though, in the second example, the Accusative *curiam* is used with the same preposition. The rule is, that the Latin preposition *in* is used with the Accusative when it means *into*, and with the Ablative when it means *in*.

EXERCISE IX.

I. Vocabulary.

Ad, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	to, towards.
Cicērō, Cicērōnis, <i>m.</i>	Cicero, the Roman orator.
Consul, consulis, <i>m.</i>	consul. ¹
Contrā, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	against, contrary to.
Exsul, exsulis, <i>m. and f.</i>	exile.
Frāter, frātris, <i>m.</i>	brother.
Nōmēn, nōminis, <i>n.</i>	name.
Orātiō, orātiōnis, <i>f.</i>	oration, speech.
Orātōr, orātōris, <i>m.</i>	orator.
Victōr, victōris, <i>m.</i>	victor, conqueror.

II. Translate into English.

1. Leo, leōnis, leōnes. 2. Virgo, virgīnis, virgīnes. 3. Solis, solem, soles. 4. Consulis, consulem, consules. 5. Solibus, consulibus. 6. Passēris, vultūris. 7. Passerum, vulturum. 8. Patri, pastōri. 9. Patres, pastores. 10. Carmen, carmina. 11. Caput, capita. 12. Opēris, corpōris. 13. Cicerōnis² oratio. 14. Cicerōnis oratiōnes. 15. Oratiōne consulis. 16. Ad gloriam.³ 17. Contra regem.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The exile, the exiles. 2. For the exile, for the exiles. 3. Of an exile, of the exiles. 4. The shepherd, the orator. 5. Of shepherds, of orators. 6. Shepherds, orators. 7. Of a shepherd, of an orator. 8. A song, a name. 9. Songs,

¹ The *consuls* were joint presidents of the Roman commonwealth. They were elected annually, and were two in number.

² See Rule XVI. 395, and Model.

³ The Accusative *gloriam* is here used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII. 432.

names. 10. Of songs, of names. 11. Father, brother. 12. To¹ the father, to the brother. 13. Contrary to the law.² 14. Contrary to the laws of the state.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

us, — *masculine*; **u**, — *neuter*.

They are declined as follows:

Fructus, <i>fruit</i> .	Cornu, <i>horn</i> .	Case-Endings.	
SINGULAR.			
N. fruct ūs	corn ū	ūs	ū
G. fruct ūs	corn ūs	ūs	ūs
D. fruct uī	corn ū	uī	ū
A. fruct ūm	corn ū	ūm	ū
V. fruct ūs	corn ū	ūs	ū
A. fruct ū	corn ū	ū	ū
PLURAL.			
N. fruct ūs	corn uū	ūs	uū
G. fruct uūm	corn uūm	uūm	uūm
D. fruct ībūs	corn ībūs	ībūs (ūbūs)	ībūs (ūbūs)
A. fruct ūs	corn uū	ūs	uū
V. fruct ūs	corn uū	ūs	uū
A. fruct ībūs .	corn ībūs .	ībūs (ūbūs).	ībūs (ūbūs).

1. **Case-Endings.**—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings placed on the right.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—*Cantus* song; *currus*, chariot; *cursus*, course; *versus*, verse; *gēnu*, knee.

¹ *To* should still be regarded as a sign of the Dative, though it may sometimes be rendered by the preposition *ad*.

² See Rule XXXII, 432. The words *contrary to* are to be rendered by a single Latin preposition.

EXERCISE X.

I. Vocabulary.

Adventūs, ūs, m.	arrival, approach.
Antē, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	before.
Caesār, Caesāris, m.	Caesar, a Roman surname.
Cantūs, ūs, m.	singing, song.
Conspectūs, ūs, m.	sight, presence.
Exercītūs, ūs, m.	army.
Hostīs, hostīs, m. and f.	enemy.
Impētūs, ūs, m.	attack.
In, <i>prep.</i>	into with acc., in with abl.
Luscīniā, ae, f.	nightingale.
Occāsūs, ūs, m.	the setting, as of the sun.
Post, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	after.
Ver, vēris, n.	spring.

II. Translate into English.

1. Fructus, cantus. 2. Fructibus, cantibus. 3. Cantus lusciniæ.¹ 4. Cantu lusciniæ. 5. Cantibus lusciniarum. 6. Adventus veris. 7. Post adventum² veris.¹ 8. Solis occāsus. 9. Post solis occāsum. 10. Caesāris adventu. 11. Ante adventum Caesāris. 12. Impētus hostium. 13. Impētu hostium. 14. In conspectu exercītus.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The army, the armies. 2. For the army, for the armies. 3. Of the army, of the armies. 4. The arrival of the army. 5. Before the arrival of the army. 6. After²

¹ Genitive, according to Rule XVI. See p. 22.

² Used with *post*, according to Rule XXXII. See p. 24.

³ See Rule XXXII. 432, p. 24. The pupil will remember that the English prepositions, *to*, *for*, *with*, *from*, *by*, are generally rendered into Latin by merely putting the noun in the proper case, i.e. in the Dative for *to* or *for*, and in the Ablative for *with*, *from*, *by*. Other English prepositions, *before*, *after*, *behind*, *between*, etc., are rendered into Latin by corresponding Latin prepositions.

the arrival of the consul. 7. The singing of the nightingale. 8. After the setting of the sun. 9. Before the attack of the enemy. 10. After the attack of the enemy.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

119. Nouns of the fifth declension end in **es**, — *feminine*, and are declined as follows:

*Dies, day.*¹ *Res, thing.* Case-Endings.

SINGULAR.

<i>N. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>G. diēī</i>	<i>rēī</i>	<i>cī</i>
<i>D. diēī</i>	<i>rēī</i>	<i>cī</i>
<i>A. diēm</i>	<i>rēm</i>	<i>ēm</i>
<i>V. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>A. diē</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>ē</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>G. diērūm</i>	<i>rērūm</i>	<i>ērūm</i>
<i>D. diēbūs</i>	<i>rēbūs</i>	<i>ēbūs</i>
<i>A. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>V. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>A. diēbūs.</i>	<i>rēbūs.</i>	<i>ēbūs.</i>

1. **Case-Endings.**—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings placed on the right.

E in *ei* is generally short when preceded by a consonant, otherwise long.

2. **Examples for Practice.**²—*Acies*, battle-array; *effigies*, effigy; *facies*, face; *series*, series; *species*, form; *spes*, hope.

¹ *Dies*, day, is an exception in Gender, as it is generally *masculine*, though sometimes *feminine* in the singular.

² Nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want, in the Plural, the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative. These cases must, therefore, be omitted in declining these examples.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

 121. Case-Endings of Latin nouns.¹

SINGULAR.

Dec. I. Fem.	Dec. II. Masc., Neut.	Dec. III. M. & F.	Dec. IV. Masc.	Dec. IV. Neut.	D. V. Fem.
N. ā	ūs — ² ūm	s (es, is) ³ — ě —	ūs	ū	ēs
G. ae	ī ī	īs	ūs	ūs	ēī
D. ae	ō ō	ī	uī	ū	ēī
A. ām	ūm ūm	ēm (īm)	ūm	ū	ēm
V. ā	ĕ —	like nom.	ūs	ū	ēs
A. ā	ō ō	ĕ (ī)	ū	ū	ē

PLURAL.

N. ae	ī	ā	īēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs
G. ārūm	ōrūm	ōrūm	ūm (iūm)	ūm (iūm)	uūm	uūm	ērūm
D. īs	īs	īs	ībūs	ībūs	ībūs (ūbūs)	ībūs (ūbūs)	ēbūs
A. ās	ōs	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs
V. ae	ī	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs
A. īs.	īs	īs.	ībūs	ībūs.	ībūs (ūbūs)	ībūs (ūbūs).	ēbūs

EXERCISE XI.

I. Vocabulary.

Aciēs, āciēī, f.	battle-array, army.
Amicūs, ī, m.	friend.
Cībūs, ī, m.	food.
Dē, prep. with abl.	concerning.
Diēs, diēī, m. and f.	day.
Fāciēs, fāciēī, f.	face, appearance.
Nūmērūs, ī, m.	number, quantity.
Rēs, rēī, f.	thing, affair.
Spēcīēs, spēcīēī, f.	appearance.
Spēs, spēī, f.	hope.
Victōriā, ae, f.	victory.

¹ This table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek.

² The dash denotes that the case-ending is sometimes wanting: *er* and *ir* in Dec. II., it will be remembered, are not case-endings, but parts of the stem (45, 1).

³ The enclosed endings are less common than the others.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Diēi, diērum, diēbus. 2. Aciēi, aciem, acie. 3. Diem, speciem. 4. Die, specie. 5. Res, spes. 6. Rei, spei. 7. Victoriae spes. 8. Victoriae spe. 9. Diēi horae. 10. Numērus diērum. 11. Gloria, cibus, nubes, cantus, facies. 12. Glorīae, cibi, nubis, cantus, faciēi. 13. Gloriam, cibum, nubem, cantum, faciem.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A day, days. 2. Of the day, of the days. 3. For the day, for the days. 4. The thing, the things. 5. With the thing, with the things. 6. Concerning the thing, concerning the things. 7. Of the thing, of the things. 8. Concerning the battle-array. 9. Wisdom, friend, citizen, fruit, hope. 10. For wisdom, for a citizen, for hope.

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

146. The adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bōnus*, good; *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies; *bonus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

I. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

148. Adjectives of this class have in the nominative singular the endings:

Masc., Dec. II.

Fem., Dec. I.

Neut., Dec. II.

us —¹,

a,

um.

They are declined as follows:

Bonus, good.

SINGULAR.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> bōnūs	bōnā	bōnūm
<i>Gen.</i> bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i> bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i> bonūm	bonām	bonūm
<i>Voc.</i> bonē	bonā	bonūm
<i>Abl.</i> bonō	bonā	bonō ;

PLURAL.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> bonī	bonae	bonā
<i>Gen.</i> bonōrūm	bonārūm	bonōrūm
<i>Dat.</i> bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i> bonōs	bonās	bonā
<i>Voc.</i> bonī	bonae	bonā
<i>Abl.</i> bonīs	bonīs	bonīs.

Liber, free.

SINGULAR.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> libēr	libērā	libērūm
<i>Gen.</i> libērī	libērae	libērī
<i>Dat.</i> libērō	libērae	libērō
<i>Acc.</i> libērūm	libērām	libērūm
<i>Voc.</i> libēr	libērā	libērūm
<i>Abl.</i> libērō	libērā	libērō ;

PLURAL

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> libērī	libērae	libērā
<i>Gen.</i> liberōrūm	liberārūm	liberōrūm
<i>Dat.</i> libērīs	libērīs	libērīs
<i>Acc.</i> libērōs	libērās	libērā
<i>Voc.</i> libērī	libērae	libērā
<i>Abl.</i> libērīs	libērīs	libērīs.

¹ The dash indicates that the ending is sometimes wanting. See 45, 1.

Aeger, *sick*.

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	aegĕr	aegră	aegrŭm
Gen.	aegrī	aegrac	aegrī
Dat.	aegrō	aegrac	aegrō
Acc.	aegrŭm	aegrām	aegrŭm
Voc.	aeger	aegră	aegrŭm
Abl.	aegrō	aegrā	aegrō ;

PLURAL.

Nom.	aegrī	aegrac	aegră
Gen.	aegrōrŭm	aegrārŭm	aegrōrŭm
Dat.	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
Acc.	aegrōs	aegrās	aegră
Voc.	aegrī	aegrac	aegră
Abl.	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs.

1. *Bonus* is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Dec. II. (45), in the Fem. like *mensa* of Dec. I. (42), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Dec. II. (45).

2. *Liber* differs in declension from *bonus* only in dropping *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc. (45, 3, 1). *Aeger* differs from *liber* only in dropping *e* before *r* (45, 3, 2).

3. Most adjectives in *er* are declined like *aeger*.

RULE XXXIII.—Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE:

Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind*.¹ Cic. Vĕrae āmicītiaē, *true friendships*. Cic. Māgister optĭmus, *the best teacher*. Cic.

¹ Here the adjective *caeca* is in the feminine gender, in the singular number, and in the nominative case, to agree with *fortūna*. It is declined like *BONUS*: *caecus, caeca, caecum*.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Verae amicitiae, True friendships.

Verae is an adjective (146) of the First and Second Declensions (147): STEM, *ver* (41, 148, 1). Singular: N. *verus, veră, verum*; G. *veri, verae, veri*; D. *vero, verae, vero*; A. *verum, veram, verum*; V. *vere, veră, verum*; A. *vero, veră, vero*. Plural: N. *veri, verae, vera*; G. *verorum, verarum, verorum*; D. *veris, veris, veris*; A. *veros, veras, vera*; V. *veri, verae, vera*; A. *veris, veris, veris*. It is in the Nominative Plural Feminine, and agrees with its noun *amicitiae*, according to Rule XXXIII: "An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE."

EXERCISE XII.



I. Vocabulary.

Annŭlŭs, i, m.	ring.
Aureŭs, ă, ŭm, ¹	golden.
Beătŭs, ă, ŭm,	happy, blessed.
Bŏnŭs, ă, ŭm,	good.
Egrĕgiŭs, ă, ŭm,	distinguished.
Fidŭs, ă, ŭm,	faithful.
Grătŭs, ă, ŭm,	acceptable, pleasing.
Magnŭs, ă, ŭm,	great.
Multŭs, ă, ŭm,	much, many.
Puellă, ae, f.	girl.
Pulchĕr, pulchră, pulchrŭm,	beautiful.
Rĕgĭnă, ae, f.	queen.
Rĕgnŭm, i, n.	kingdom.
Vĕrŭs, ă, ŭm,	true.
Vită, ae, f.	life.

¹ The endings *a* and *um* belong respectively to the feminine and to the neuter. Thus *aureus, aurea, aureum*, like *bonus*, 148.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amīcus fidus.¹ 2. Amīci fidi. 3. Amīco fido. 4. Amīcum fidum. 5. Amīce fide. 6. Amicōrum fidōrum. 7. Amīcis fidis. 8. Amicos fidos. 9. Corōnă aureă. 10. Corōnae aureae. 11. Corōnam auream. 12. Corōnă aureă. 13. Coronārum aureārum. 14. Corōnis aureis. 15. Corōnas aureas. 16. Donum gratum. 17. Doni grati. 18. Dono grato. 19. Dona grata. 20. Donōrum gratōrum. 21. Donis gratis. 22. Ager pulcher. 23. Puellă pulchră. 24. Donum pulchrum. 25. Agri pulchri. 26. Puellae pulchrae. 27. Dona pulchra. 28. Beătă vită. 29. Aureus annūlus. 30. Aurei annūli. 31. Magnă gloriă. 32. Egregiă victoriă.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A true² friend. 2. The true² friends. 3. For a true friend. 4. For true friends. 5. Of the true friend. 6. Of true friends. 7. True glory. 8. With true glory. 9. Of true glory. 10. An acceptable word. 11. Acceptable words. 12. With acceptable words. 13. Of acceptable words. 14. A beautiful book. 15. The beautiful books. 16. With a beautiful book. 17. Of beautiful books. 18. The beautiful queen. 19. The crown of the beautiful queen. 20. The beautiful crown of the queen. 21. A good king, a good queen, a good kingdom. 22. The brothers of the good king.

¹ In Latin the adjective generally follows its noun, as in this example; though sometimes it precedes it, as in English. When emphatic, the adjective is placed before its noun; as, *Verae amicitiae*, true friendships. *Fidus* agrees with *amicus*, according to Rule XXXIII.

² Be sure and put the adjective in the right form to agree with its noun, according to Rule XXXIII.

II. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

150. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes:

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms, — one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms, — the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form, — the same for all genders.

151. I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS of this declension have in the nominative singular:

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
er,	is,	e.

They are declined as follows:

Acer, sharp.

SINGULAR.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. acēr</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>G. acrīs</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrīs</i>
<i>D. acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>
<i>A. acrēm</i>	<i>acrēm</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>V. acēr</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>A. acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i> ;

PLURAL.

<i>N. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>G. acriūm</i>	<i>acriūm</i>	<i>acriūm</i>
<i>D. acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>
<i>A. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>V. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>A. acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs.</i>

152. II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS have in the nominative singular:

M. and F.	Neut.	
1. is	e ,	for positives.
2. ior (or)	ius (us) ,	for comparatives.

They are declined as follows:

Tristis, sad.

Tristior, more sad.¹

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. tristīs	tristĕ	N. tristiōr	tristiūs
G. tristīs	tristīs	G. tristiōrīs	tristiōrīs
D. tristī	tristī	D. tristiōrī	tristiōrī
A. tristēm	tristĕ	A. tristiōrēm	tristiūs
V. tristīs	tristĕ	V. tristiōr	tristiūs
A. tristī	tristī ;	A. tristiōrĕ (ī)	tristiōrĕ (ī) ;

PLURAL.

M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. tristēs	tristiā	N. tristiōrēs	tristiōrā
G. tristiūm	tristiūm	G. tristiōrūm	tristiōrūm
D. tristībūs	tristībūs	D. tristiōribūs	tristiōribūs
A. tristēs	tristiā	A. tristiōrēs	tristiōrā
V. tristēs	tristiā	V. tristiōrēs	tristiōrā
A. tristībūs	tristībūs .	A. tristiōribūs	tristiōribūs .

153. III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING. — All other adjectives have but one form in the nominative singular for all genders. They generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *l* or *r*, and are declined in the main like nouns of the same endings. The following are examples:

Fēlix, happy.

Prūdēns, prudent.

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. fēlix	fēlix	N. prūdēns	prūdēns
G. fēlicīs	fēlicīs	G. prudentīs	prudentīs
D. fēlicī	fēlicī	D. prudentī	prudentī
A. fēlicēm	fēlix	A. prudentēm	prūdēns
V. fēlix	fēlix	V. prūdēns	prūdēns
A. fēlicĕ (ī)	fēlicĕ (ī) ;	A. prudentĕ (ī)	prudentĕ (ī) ;

¹ Comparative. See 160.

PLURAL.

N. felicēs	feli <i>c</i> iā	N. prudentēs	prudentiā
G. feliciūm	feliciūm	G. prudentiūm	prudentiūm
D. felici ū s	felici ū s	D. prudenti ū s	prudenti ū s
A. felicēs	feli <i>c</i> iā	A. prudentēs	prudentiā
V. felicēs	feli <i>c</i> iā	V. prudentēs	prudentiā
A. felici ū s	felici ū s.	A. prudenti ū s	prudenti ū s.

EXERCISE XIII.

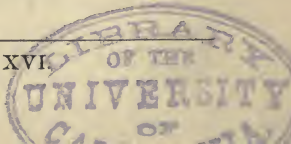
I. *Vocabulary.*

Acēr, ācris, ācrē,	<i>sharp, severe.</i>
Animāl, ānimālīs, <i>n.</i>	<i>animal.</i>
Brēvis, ē,	<i>short, brief.</i>
Crūdēlis, ē,	<i>cruel.</i>
Dōlōr, dōlōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>pain, grief.</i>
Dux, dūcis, <i>m.</i>	<i>leader.</i>
Fertīlis, ē,	<i>fertile.</i>
Fortīs, ē,	<i>brave.</i>
Nāvālīs, ē,	<i>naval.</i>
Omnīs, ē,	<i>every, all, whole.</i>
Pugnā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>battle.</i>
Sāpiens, sāpientīs,	<i>wise.</i>
Singulārīs, ē,	<i>singular, remarkable.</i>
Utilīs, ē,	<i>useful.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Dolor acer. 2. Dolōres acres. 3. Lex acris. 4. Legibus acribus. 5. Hostis crudēlis. 6. Hostem crudēlem.
7. Miles fortis. 8. Virtus militis¹ fortis. 9. Virtūte militum¹ fortium. 10. Ager fertīlis. 11. In agro fertīli. 12. Agros fertīles. 13. In agris fertilibus. 14. Post vitam brevem. 15. Pugnae navāles. 16. Post pugnas navāles.
17. Singulāris virtus. 18. Singulāri virtūte. 19. Omne animāl. 20. Omnia animalia.

¹ Genitive, according to Rule XVI.



III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A useful citizen. 2. Of useful citizens. 3. For a useful citizen. 4. For useful citizens. 5. Of a useful citizen. 6. The wise judge. 7. Wise judges. 8. For the wise judge. 9. For wise judges. 10. Brave soldiers. 11. For brave soldiers. 12. A brave soldier. 13. Of the brave soldier. 14. The brave leader. 15. Brave leaders. 16. The word of the brave leader. 17. By the words of the brave leader.

+

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms to denote different degrees of quality. They are usually called the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative degree: *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*,¹ high, higher, highest.

Comparatives and superlatives are sometimes best rendered into English by *too* and *very*, instead of *more* and *most*: *doctus*, learned; *doctior*, more learned, or too learned; *doctissimus*, most learned, or very learned.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:

I. *Terminational Comparison* — by endings.

II. *Adverbial Comparison* — by adverbs.

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:

Comparative.			Superlative.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
iōr,	iōr,	iūs.	issimūs,	issimā,	issimūm.

¹ Each of these forms of the adjective is declined. Thus *altus* and *altissimus* are declined like *bonus*, 148: *altus*, *a*, *um*; *alti*, *ae*, *i*, etc.; *altissimus*, *a*, *um*; *altissimi*, *ae*, *i*, etc. *Altior* is declined like *tristior*, 152: *altior*, *altius*; *altiōris*, etc.

EXAMPLES.

Altus, altior, altissimus: *high, higher, highest.*
lēvis, levior, levissimus: *light, lighter, lightest.*

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs *māgis*, more, and *maxīme*, most, to the positive:

Arduus, māgis arduus, maxīme arduus.
Arduous, more arduous, most arduous.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Orātōr clārīōr, *A more renowned orator.*

Clarior is an adjective (146) in the Comparative degree (160, 162), from the positive *clarus*, which is of the First and Second Declensions (148). Positive, *clārus*; STEM, *clār*; Comparative, *clarior*; Superlative, *clarissimus*. *Clarior* is an adjective of the Third Declension, declined like *tristior* (152). Singular: N. *clarior*, *clarius*; G. *clariōris*, *clariōris*, etc.¹ It is in the Nominative Singular Masculine, and agrees with its noun *orātor*, according to Rule XXXIII.²

EXERCISE XIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Altūs, ā, ūm,	<i>high, lofty.</i>
Clārūs, ā, ūm,	<i>distinguished, renowned.</i>
Intēr, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>among, in the midst of.</i>
Mons, montīs, m.	<i>mountain.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Orātōr clarus. 2. Orātōr clarior.³ 3. Orātōr clarissimus. 4. Oratōres clari. 5. Oratōres clariōres.³ 6. Ora-

¹ Decline through all the cases of both numbers.

² Give the Rule.

³ Declined like *tristior*, 152. Comparatives and superlatives, as well as positives, must agree with their nouns, according to Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

tōres clarissīmi. 7. Beāta vita. 8. Beatior vita. 9. Beatiſsīma vita. 10. Donum gratum. 11. Donum gratius. 12. Donum gratissīmum. 13. Dona grata. 14. Dona gratiōra. 15. Dona gratissīma. 16. Milītes fortissīmi. 17. Liber utilis. 18. Libri utiliōres. 19. Libris utilissīmis. 20. Mons altus. 21. Mōtes altiōres.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A fertile field. 2. A more fertile field. 3. The most fertile field. 4. Fertile fields. 5. More fertile fields. 6. A useful life. 7. A more useful life. 8. The most useful life. 9. Useful lives. 10. More useful lives. 11. The most useful lives. 12. A pleasing song. 13. A more pleasing song. 14. The most pleasing song.

NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

I. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS: ¹*ūnus*, one; *duo*, two.
2. ORDINAL NUMBERS: ¹*primus*, first; *secundus*, second.
3. DISTRIBUTIVES: ¹*singūli*, one by one; *bīni*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

174. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

CARDINALS.

1. *ūnūs, unā, unūm,*
2. *duō, duae, duō,*
3. *trēs, triā,*
4. *quattuor,*
5. *quinquē,*
6. *sex,*

ORDINALS.

- primūs, first,*
- secundūs, second,*
- tertiūs, third,*
- quartūs, fourth,*
- quintūs, fifth,*
- sextūs,*

DISTRIBUTIVES.

- singūli, one by one.*
- bīni, two by two.*
- terni (trinī).*
- quāterni.*
- quīni.*
- seni.*

¹ *Cardinals* denote simply the number of objects: *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two. *Ordinals* denote the place of an object in a series: *primus*, first; *secundus*.

7. septēm,	septīmūs,	septēnī.
8. octō,	octāvūs,	octōnī.
9. nōvēm,	nōnūs,	nōvēnī.
10. dēcēm,	dēcīmūs,	dēnī.
11. undēcīm,	undēcīmūs,	undēnī.
12. duōdēcīm,	duōdēcīmūs,	duōdēnī.
13. trēdēcīm, or dēcēm ēt trēs,	tertiūs dēcīmūs,	ternī dēnī.
20. vīgintī,	vīcēsīmūs,	vīcēnī. 20
21. { vīgintī ūnūs,	vīcēsīmūs prīmūs,	vīcēnī singūli. 21
{ ūnūs ēt vīgintī,	ūnūs ēt vīcēsīmūs,	singūli ēt vīcēnī
30. trīgintā,	trīcēsīmūs,	trīcēnī. 30
40. quadrāgintā,	quadrāgēsīmūs,	quadrāgēnī.
50. quinquāgintā,	quinquāgēsīmūs,	quinquāgēnī.
100. centūm,	centēsīmūs,	centēnī.
200. dūcentī, ae, ā,	dūcentēsīmūs,	dūcēnī.
1000. millē,	millēsīmūs,	singulā millia.

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. Cardinals.

175. On the declension of cardinals, observe,

1. That the units, *ūnus*, *duo*, and *tres*, are declined.
2. That the other units, all the tens, and *centum*, are in declinable.
3. That the hundreds are declined.¹
4. That *mille* is sometimes declined.²

176. The first three cardinals are declined as follows:

1. Unus, one.

	Singular.			Plural.		
N. ūnūs,	ūnā,	ūnūm,	ūnī,	ūnae,	ūnā,	
G. unīūs,	unīūs,	unīūs,	unōrūm,	unārūm,	unōrūm,	
D. unī,	unī,	unī,	unīs,	unīs,	unīs,	
A. unūm,	unām,	unūm,	unōs,	unās,	unā,	
V. unē,	unā,	unūm,				
A. unō,	unā,	unō;	unīs,	unīs,	unīs.	

second. *Distributives* denote the number of objects taken at a time: *singūli*, one by one; *binī*, two by two.

¹ These are declined like the plural of *bonus* (148); *ducenti*, *ae*, *a*, two hundred.

² Though only in the plural, and only when used substantively. It is then declined like the plural of *mare* (50); *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*.

2. Duo, *two*.3. Tres, *three*.

N. duō,	duae,	duō,	trēs, <i>m. and f.</i>	triā, <i>n.</i>
G. duōrūm,	duārūm,	duōrūm,	triūm,	triūm,
D. duōbūs,	duābūs,	duōbūs,	tribūs,	tribūs,
A. duōs, duō,	duās,	duō,	trēs,	triā,
A. duōbūs,	duābūs,	duōbūs.	tribūs,	tribūs.

EXERCISE XV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Annūs, 1, <i>m.</i>	<i>year.</i>
Classis, classis, <i>f.</i>	<i>fleet.</i>
Fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, <i>f.</i>	<i>fortitude, bravery.</i>
Impēriūm, ii, <i>n.</i>	<i>reign, power.</i>
Nāvis, nāvis, <i>f.</i>	<i>ship.</i>
Proeliūm, ii, <i>n.</i>	<i>battle.</i>
Vīr, vīri, <i>m.</i>	<i>man, hero.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Unus¹ liber. 2. Duo¹ libri. 3. Liber primus.¹ 4. Liber secundus. 5. Tres libri. 6. Tertius liber. 7. Tria bella. 8. Post tria bella. 9. Post tertium bellum. 10. Ante quartum bellum. 11. Quattuor² anni. 12. Post bellum quinque annōrum. 13. Decem² dies. 14. Decimus dies.³ 15. Decem horae. 16. Decima hora. 17. Decem proelia. 18. Decimum proelium. 19. Horā diēi decimā.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Five friends. 2. Of five friends. 3. The fifth year. 4. The fifth day. 5. The fifth present. 6. With five presents. 7. Eight books. 8. With eight books. 9. The eighth book. 10. Before the eighth book. 11. The bravery of two soldiers. 12. By the bravery of two soldiers.

¹ Numeral adjectives agree with their nouns, like other adjectives.

² The indeclinable numeral adjectives (175, 2) may be used without change of form with nouns of any gender, and in any case.

³ *Dies*, it will be remembered, is generally *masculine*.

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

182. The Pronoun is that part of speech which properly supplies the place of nouns: *ěgo*, I; *tu*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:

1. Personal Pronouns: *tu*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hic*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *qui*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quis*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *aliquis*, some one.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are *ěgo*, I; *tu*, thou; *sui* (Nom. not used), of himself, herself, itself.

They are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.

N. <i>ěgŏ</i>	<i>tŭ</i>	
G. <i>meī</i>	<i>tuī</i>	<i>suī</i>
D. <i>mihi</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>
A. <i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>sē</i>
V.	<i>tŭ</i>	
A. <i>mē</i> ;	<i>tē</i> ;	<i>sē</i> ;

PLURAL.

N. <i>nŏs</i>	<i>vŏs</i>	
G. <i>nostrŭm</i> }	<i>vestrŭm</i> }	<i>suī</i>
<i>nostrī</i> }	<i>vestrī</i> }	
D. <i>nŏbis</i>	<i>vŏbis</i>	<i>sibi</i>
A. <i>nŏs</i>	<i>vŏs</i>	<i>sē</i>
V.	<i>vŏs</i>	
A. <i>nŏbis</i> .	<i>vŏbis</i>	<i>sē</i> .

1. Substantive Pronouns. — Personal pronouns are also called *Substantive* pronouns, because they are always used as substantives.

2. Reflexive Pronoun. — *Sui*, from its reflexive signification, of himself, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives*:

meus, <i>my</i> ,	noster, <i>our</i> .
tuus, <i>thy, your</i> ,	vester, <i>your</i> .
suus, <i>his, her, its</i> ,	suus, <i>their</i> .

They are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions;¹ *meus, mea, meum*; *noster, nostra, nostrum*: but *meus* has in the vocative singular masculine generally *mi*, sometimes *meus*.

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are

Hic, ille, iste, ipse, is, idem.

They are declined as follows:

Hic, this.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. hic	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
G. hujūs	hujūs	hujūs	hōrūm	hārūm	hōrūm
D. huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
A. hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
V.					
A. hōc	hāc	hōc;	hīs	hīs	hīs.

Illē, he or that.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. illē	illā	illūd	illi	illae	illā
G. illiūs	illiūs	illiūs	illōrūm	illārūm	illōrūm
D. illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
A. illūm	illām	illūd	illōs	illās	illā
V.					
A. illō	illā	illō;	illis	illis	illis.

¹ See *bonus* and *aeger*, 148.

Istě, *that*.

Istě, *that*, is declined like *illě*. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

Ipsě, *self, he*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. ipsě	ipsă	ipsŭm	ipsi	ipsae	ipsă
G. ipsiŭs	ipsiŭs	ipsiŭs	ipsōrŭm	ipsārŭm	ipsōrŭm
D. ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
A. ipsŭm	ipsŭm	ipsŭm	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsă
V.					
A. ipsō	ipsă	ipsō ;	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis.

Is, *he, that*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. is	eă	id	ii	eae	eă
G. ejŭs	ejŭs	ejŭs	eōrŭm	eārŭm	eōrŭm
D. ei	eī	eī	iis (eis)	iis (eis)	iis (eis)
A. eŭm	eām	id	eōs	eās	eă
V.					
A. eō	eă	cō ;	iis (eis)	iis (eis)	iis (eis).

Idem, *the same*.

Idem, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *isdem* to *idem*, and *iddem* to *idem*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem* ; thus :

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. idēm	eădēm	idēm	iidēm	eaedēm	eădēm
G. ejusdēm	ejusdēm	ejusdēm	eōrundēm	eārundēm	eōrundēm
D. eidēm	eidēm	eidēm	iisdēm	iisdēm	iisdēm
A. eundēm	eandēm	idēm	eōsdēm	eāsdēm	eădēm
V.					
A. eodēm	eădēm	cōdēm ;	iisdēm	iisdēm	iisdēm.

IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *qui*, who, so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows :

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. quī	quae	quōd	quī	quae	quae
G. cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrūm	quārūm	quōrūm
D. cui	cui	cui	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs
A. quēm	quā	quōd	quōs	quās	quae
V.					
A. quō	quā	quō ;	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs.

V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are

Quis and *qui*, with their compounds.

Quis (who, which, what?) is generally used substantively, and is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. quis	quae	quīd	quī	quae	quae
G. cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrūm	quārūm	quōrūm
D. cui	cui	cui	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs
A. quēm	quā	quīd	quōs	quās	quae
V.					
A. quō	quā	quō ;	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs.

Qui (which, what?) is generally used adjectively, and is declined like the *relative qui*.

VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are

Quis and *qui*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, any one, *qui*, any one, any, are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*.¹

191. From *quis* and *qui* are formed

I. *The Indefinites:*

aliquis,	aliqua,	aliquid	or aliquod,	some, some one.
quispiam,	quaepiam,	quidpiam	or quodpiam,	some, some one.
quidam,	quaedam,	quiddam	or quoddam,	certain, certain one.
quisquam,		quidquam,		any one.

¹ But after *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, and *num*, the Feminine Singular and the Neuter Plural have *quae* or *qua*; *si quae*, *si qua*. In like manner, *aliquis* has *aliqua* in the Feminine Singular and in the Neuter Plural.

II. *The General Indefinites:*

quisque,	quaeque,	quidque	or quodque,	every, every one.
quīvis,	quaevis,	quidvis	or quodvis,	any one you please.
quilibet,	quaelibet,	quidlibet	or quodlibet,	any one you please.

EXERCISE XVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Consiliūm, ii, n.	design, plan.
Epistolā, ae, f.	letter.
Ex, prep. with abl.	from.
Insulā, ae, f.	island.
Pārens, pārentis, m. and f.	parent.
Pars, partis, f.	part, portion.
Pātriā, ae, f.	country, native country.
Praeclārūs, ū, ūm,	distinguished.
Prātūm, ī, n.	meadow.
Prō, prep. with abl.	for, in behalf of.
Quīvis, quaevis, quodvis,	whoever, whatever.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Mihi, tibi, sibi. 2. Ad me,¹ ad te. 3. Contra nos, contra se. 4. Ante vos, ante nos. 5. Pro vobis.¹ 6. Meā² vitā. 7. Patriā tuā. 8. Pro patriā tuā.² 9. Contra patriam tuam. 10. Nostra consilia. 11. Nostris² consiliis. 12. Vestri patres. 13. In nostrā patriā. 14. Hic² puer, hi pūeri. 15. Haec corōnā, hae corōnae. 16. Hoc donum, haec dona. 17. Haec urbs praeclārā. 18. Ex hac vitā. 19. Illius libri. 20. In eā pugnā. 21. In eōdem prato. 22. Quae² urbs?

¹ See 184, 1. Substantive pronouns are used in the several cases like nouns, and are parsed by the same rules. See Rule XXXII. 432. Other pronouns are sometimes used as nouns, and parsed in the same way.

² The *Possessive*, the *Demonstrative*, and the *Interrogative* pronouns, in this exercise, are all used as *adjectives*, and agree with their nouns, like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. 438, p. 32. Hence *meā* is in the Nominative Singular Feminine, to agree with *vitā*; *nostris*, in the Dative or Ablative Plural Neuter, to agree with *consiliis*; *hic*, in the Nominative Singular Masculine, to agree with *puer*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We, you. 2. You, me, himself. 3. For you, for me, for himself. 4. Of himself, of you. 5. Against you, against me. 6. My book, your book, his book. 7. My books, your books, his books. 8. Our parents, your parents, their parents. 9. This letter, that letter. 10. These letters, those letters. 11. This city, that city. 12. These cities, those cities. 13. After that victory. 14. The same words. 15. With the same words.

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

192. Verbs in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *lęgit*, he reads.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes:

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS,—which admit a direct object of their action: *servum*¹ *verbęrat*, he beats the slave.

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS,—which do not admit such an object: *puer currit*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice*, *Mood*, *Tense*, *Number*, and *Person*.

I. VOICES.

195. There are two Voices:²

I. THE ACTIVE VOICE,—which represents the subject as acting or existing: *pāter filium amat*, the father loves his son; *est*, he is.

¹ Here *servum*, the slave, is the direct object of the action denoted by the verb *beats*: *beats* (what?) *the slave*.

² *Voice* shows whether the subject *acts* (Active Voice), or is *acted upon* (Passive Voice).

II. THE PASSIVE VOICE, — which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing: *filius a patre amātur*, the son is loved by his father.

II. MOODS.

196. Moods¹ are either Definite or Indefinite:

I. The **Definite** or **Finite Moods** make up the Finite Verb; they are:

1. The **INDICATIVE MOOD**, — which either asserts something as a *fact*, or inquires after the fact: *lēgit*, he is reading; *legitne*, is he reading?

2. The **SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD**, — which expresses, not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*, often rendered by *may*, *can*, etc.: *lēgat*, he may read, let him read.

3. The **IMPERATIVE MOOD**, — which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty*: *lēge*, read thou.

II. The **Indefinite Moods** express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives; they are:

1. The **INFINITIVE**, — which, like the English Infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb, without any necessary reference to person or number: *legere*, to read.

2. The **GERUND**, — which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in **ING**: *amandi*, of loving; *amandi causā*, for the sake of loving.

3. The **SUPINE**, — which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular*: *amatum*, to love, for loving; *amātu*, to be loved, in loving.

4. The **PARTICIPLE**, — which, like the English Participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

¹ *Mood*, or *Mode*, means *manner*, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several Moods.

A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and Future, — *amans*, loving; *amatūrus*, about to love: and two in the Passive, the Perfect and Future, — *amātus*, loved; *amandus*, deserving to be loved.

III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses:¹

I. THREE TENSES FOR INCÓMplete ACTION:

1. Present: *amo*, I love.
2. Imperfect: *amābam*, I was loving.
3. Future: *amābo*, I shall love.

II. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION:

1. Perfect: *amāvi*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect: *amavēram*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect: *amavēro*, I shall have loved.

198. REMARKS ON TENSES.

1. **Present Perfect and Historical Perfect.** — The Latin Perfect sometimes corresponds to our Perfect with *have* (*have loved*), and is called the *Present Perfect*, or *Perfect Definite*; and sometimes to our Imperfect or Past (*loved*), and is called the *Historical Perfect*, or *Perfect Indefinite*.

2. **Principal and Historical.** — Tenses are also distinguished as

1) *Principal*: — Present, Present Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect.

2) *Historical*: — Imperfect, Historical Perfect, and Pluperfect.

3. **Tenses Wanting.** — The Subjunctive wants the Future and Future Perfect; the Imperative has only the Present and Future; the Infinitive, only the Present, Perfect, and Future.

IV. NUMBERS.

199. There are two Numbers:² SINGULAR and PLURAL.

¹ *Tense* means *time*, and is employed to designate the *time* of an action or event.

² *Number* in verbs corresponds, it will be observed, to number in nouns. See 37.

V. PERSONS.

200. There are three Persons:¹ FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.

CONJUGATION.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
āre,	ēre,	ěre,	īre.

202. **Principal Parts.** — Four forms of the verb — the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine² — are called, from their importance, the *Principal Parts* of the verb.

203. **Entire Conjugation.** — In any regular verb,

1. The VERB-STEM may be found by dropping the Infinitive Ending: *amāre*; stem, *am*.

2. The PRINCIPAL PARTS may be formed from this stem by means of proper endings.

3. The ENTIRE CONJUGATION of the verb through all its parts may be readily formed from these Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.³

¹ *Person* in verbs corresponds, it will be observed, to person in nouns. See 37.

² In the Active Voice, all these four forms are usually given as Principal Parts; but, in the Passive, only the first three.

³ In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the Principal Parts and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

204. Sum, *I am*.

Sum is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly, its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

sūm,

Pres. Inf.

essē,

Perf. Ind.

fuī,

Supine.

—.¹

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am.

SINGULAR.

*I am,**thou art,*²*he is ;**Plur.*
sūmūs,

estīs,

sunt,

PLURAL.

*we are,**you are,**they are.*

IMPERFECT.

I was.

ērām,

I was,

erās,

thou wast,

erāt,

he was ;

ērāmūs,

we were,

erātīs,

you were,

erant,

they were.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be.

ērō,

I shall be,

erīs,

thou wilt be,

erīt,

he will be ;

ērīmūs,

we shall be,

erītīs,

you will be,

erunt,

they will be.

PERFECT.

I have been, was.

fuī,

I have been,

fuistī,

thou hast been,

fuīt.

he has been ;

fuīmūs,

we have been,

fuistīs,

you have been,

fuērunt, }

they have been.

fuērē, }

PLUPERFECT.

I had been.

fuērām,

I had been,

fuērās,

thou hadst been,

fuērāt,

he had been ;

fuērāmūs,

we had been,

fuērātīs,

you had been,

fuērant,

they had been.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been.

fuērō,

I shall have been,

fuērīs,

thou wilt have been,

fuērīt,

he will have been ;

fuērīmūs,

we shall have been,

fuērītīs,

you will have been,

fuērint,

they will have been.

¹ The Supine is wanting in this verb.

² Or, *you are*: *thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse: in ordinary English, *you are* is used both in the singular and in the plural.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can be.*¹

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
ěIm,	<i>I may be,</i>	sīmūs,	<i>we may be,</i>
ěIs,	<i>thou mayst be,</i>	sītīs,	<i>you may be,</i>
ěIt,	<i>he may be ;</i>	sint,	<i>they may be.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be.

essēm,	<i>I might be,</i>	essēmūs,	<i>we might be,</i>
essēs,	<i>thou mightst be,</i>	essētīs,	<i>you might be,</i>
essēt,	<i>he might be ;</i>	essent,	<i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT.

I may or can have been.

fuērīm,	<i>I may have been,</i>	fuērīmūs,	<i>we may have been,</i>
fuērīs,	<i>thou mayst have been,</i>	fuērītīs,	<i>you may have been,</i>
fuērīt,	<i>he may have been ;</i>	fuērint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been.

fuissēm,	<i>I might have been,</i>	fuissēmūs,	<i>we might have been,</i>
fuissēs,	<i>thou mightst have been,</i>	fuissētīs,	<i>you might have been,</i>
fuissēt,	<i>he might have been ;</i>	fuissent,	<i>they might have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ěs,	<i>be thou,</i>	estě,	<i>be ye.</i>
FUT. estō,	<i>thou shalt be,²</i>	estōtě,	<i>ye shall be,</i>
estō,	<i>he shall be ;</i>	suntō,	<i>they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. essě,	<i>to be.</i>		
PERF. fuissě,	<i>to have been.</i>		
FUT. fūtūrūs ³ essě,	<i>to be about to be.</i>	FUT. fūtūrūs, ³	<i>about to be.</i>

¹ The Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*: *sit, he may be, may he be, let him be.*

² The Future is sometimes best rendered like the Present, or with *let*: *esto, thou shalt be, or be thou ; suntō, they shall be, or let them be.*

³ *Futūrus* is declined like *bonus* ; N. *futūrus, a, um*, G. *futūri, ae, i* ; so in the Infinitive : *futūrus, a, um esse.*

RULE XXXV.—Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite¹ Verb agrees with its Subject² in NUMBER and PERSON:

Deus mundum aedificāvit,³ *God made the world.* Cic. Ego rēges ejēci, vos tŷrannos intrōdūcītis, *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES.—These agree with the subject, according to Rule XXXIII. page 32:

Thēbāni accūsāti sunt,⁴ *The Thebans were accused.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The subject is generally omitted —

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, or can be readily supplied from the context:

Discipŷlos mōneo,⁵ ut stŷdia āment,⁶ *I instruct pupils to love⁶ their studies.* Quint.

¹ Sec 196, I.

² With the Active Voice of a Transitive Verb, the *Subject* represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *performs* the action; as, *Deus* in the first example, *God made*: but, with the Passive Voice, it represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *receives* the action, i.e. *is acted upon*, as, *Thebāni*, 460, 1: *the Thebans were accused*.

³ *Aedificāvit* is in the Third Person and in the Singular Number, because its subject *deus* is in that person and number. *Ejēci* is in the First Person Singular, to agree with its subject *ego*; and *introducītis* in the Second Person Plural, to agree with its subject *vos*.

⁴ The verb *accūsāti sunt* is in the Third Person Plural, to agree with its subject *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXV.; but the participle *accūsāti*, which is one element of the verb, is in the Nominative Plural Masculine, to agree with its noun *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXIII.

⁵ The subject of *moneo* is *ego*. It is omitted, because it is a Personal Pronoun, and is, accordingly, fully implied in the verb, as the ending *eo* shows, as we shall soon see, that the subject cannot be *you*, *he*, or *they*, but must be *I*.

Ut—ament means literally *that they may love*. The subject of *ament* is the pronoun *ii*, they, referring to *discipŷlos*. It is omitted, partly because it is implied in the ending *ent*, but more especially because it can be so readily supplied from *discipŷlos*, which shows *who* are here meant by *they*

⁶ *To love*, or, more literally, *that they may love*.

The Pronoun may be expressed for emphasis or contrast, as in the second example under the rule.

I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING VERBS.

In parsing a verb,

1. Tell whether it is transitive or intransitive (193), name the Conjugation to which it belongs, give the Present Indicative Active and the Stem (203).
2. Give the Principal Parts (202), and inflect the tense in which the given form is found.¹
3. Give the voice, mood, tense, number, and person.
4. Name the subject, and give the Rule for agreement.

MODELS FOR PARSING THE VERB SUM.

1. *Sum with Subject.*

Nōs² ērāmūs, *We were.*

Erāmus is an intransitive irregular³ verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui*, — ⁴. Inflection of tense (Imperfect Indicative): *eram, eras, erat, erāmus, erātis, erant*. The form *erāmus* is found in the *Indicative* mood, *Imperfect* tense, *First* person, *Plural* number, and agrees with its *subject nos*, according to Rule XXXV.: “A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON.”

2. *Sum without Subject.*⁵

Fuī, *I have been.*

Fui is an intransitive irregular verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui*. Inflection of tense (Perfect Indicative): *fui, fuisti*,

¹ That is, if the form occurs in a given tense of the Indicative, give the several forms for the different persons and numbers in that tense and mood. The teacher may also find it convenient to require the synopsis of the mood till the required tense is found.

² *Nos* is the Subject. With an intransitive verb, the Subject represents the person (or thing) who is in the condition, or state, denoted by the verb.

³ Hence it does not belong to either of the regular conjugations.

⁴ The *Supine* is wanting.

⁵ That is, without any subject expressed.

fuit ; *fuimus*, *fuistis*, *fuērunt*, or *fuēre*. The form *fui* is found in the *Indicative* mood, *Perfect* tense, *First* person, *Singular* number, and agrees with its subject *ego* omitted (though fully implied¹ in the ending *i* of *fui*), according to Rule XXXV.

EXERCISE XVII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Sum, sumus, sunt.² 2. Es, est, estis. 3. Eram, erāmus.² 4. Erat, erant. 5. Eris, eritis.² 6. Erit, erunt. 7. Fui, fuēram, fuēro. 8. Fuimus, fuerāmus, fuerimus. 9. Fuisti, fuistis. 10. Fuit, fuērunt. 11. Fuērat, fuērant. 12. Fuērit, fuērint. 13. Sim, simus. 14. Sit, sint. 15. Essem, essēmus. 16. Esset, essent. 17. Fuērim, fuisset. 18. Fuerimus, fuissēmus. 19. Fuērit, fuērint. 20. Fuisset, fuissent. 21. Es, este.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He³ is, they³ are. 2. He has been, they have been. 3. He will be, they will be. 4. He was, they were. 5. He will have been, they will have been. 6. He had been, they had been. 7. I³ was, you were. 8. We have been, you have been. 9. You may be, they may be. 10. He would be, they would be. 11. I might have been, we might have been.

¹ See Rule XXXV., 2, together with the note.

² In parsing the forms contained in this Exercise, observe the second Model just given. If the verb is of the first person, supply, as subject, the personal pronoun (184) of the first person ; i.e., *ego* for the singular, and *nos* for the plural. If the verb is of the second person, supply the personal pronoun of the second person ; i.e., *tu* for the singular, and *vos* for the plural. If the verb is of the third person, supply the demonstrative pronoun *is* (186) for the singular, and *ii* for the plural, as the personal pronoun *sui* is not used in the Nominative : hence, *ego sum*, *nos sumus*, *ii sunt*.

³ The English pronouns in this Exercise are not to be rendered by the corresponding Latin pronouns, as the latter may be implied in the ending of the verb, as in the Latin forms above : hence, *he is* = *est*.

SUM WITH SUBJECT AND ADJECTIVE.

RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite¹ Verb is put in the Nominative :

Servius² regnāvit, *Servius reigned.* Liv. Pātent portae, *The gates are open.* Cic. Rex vīcit, *The king conquered.* Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively :

Ego rēges ejēci, *I have banished kings.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. See 460, 2 ; page 54.

MODEL FOR PARSING SUBJECTS.

Rex vīcit, *The king conquered.*

Rex is a noun (31) of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (40) ; of Class I., as it has a nominative ending *s* ($x = g-s$, of which *s* is the ending, as *g* belongs to the stem. See 50, I. note) ; STEM, *reg*. Singular : *rex, regis, regi, regem, rex, rege*. Plural : *reges, regum, regibus, reges, reges, regibus*. It is of the Masculine gender, by 35, I. 1. ; is in the Nominative Singular ; and is the subject of *vīcit*, according to Rule III. : “ The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative.”

EXERCISE XVIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Cătō, Cătōnīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Cato</i> , a distinguished Roman.
Crūdūs, ā, ūm,	<i>unripe.</i>
Diligens, Diligentīs,	<i>diligent.</i>
Discīpūlus, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>pupil.</i>

¹ See 196, I.

² In these examples, the subjects are *Servius*, *portae*, and *rex*.

Germāniā, ae, f.	Germany.
Jūcundūs, ā, ūm.	pleasant, delightful.
Laudābilis, ē.	praiseworthy, laudable.
Mātūrūs, ū, ūm.	ripe.
Pōmūm, ī, n.	fruit.

II. Translate into English.

1. Pax¹ jucunda² est.³ 2. Pax jucunda erit. 3. Vita brevis est. 4. Cato bonus fuit. 5. Cives boni fuērunt. 6. Virtus laudabilis est. 7. Libri utiles sunt. 8. Illi libri utiles erunt. 9. Ille liber utilis fuērat. 10. Utilis⁴ fuisti. 11. Utiles fuistis. 12. Germania fertilis est. 13. Agri fertiles fuērant. 14. Pomum crudum est. 15. Poma cruda sunt. 16. Poma matūra erunt. 17. Miles fortis est. 18. Milites fortes sunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The pupil is diligent.⁵ 2. The pupils were diligent. 3. The boy is good. 4. He will be happy. 5. Good boys are happy. 6. You may be happy. 7. We might have been happy. 8. This soldier will be useful. 9. These soldiers have been useful. 10. Brave soldiers are useful. 11. You will be useful. 12. Let us be useful.

¹ *Pax* is the subject of *est*, and is therefore in the Nominative, according to Rule III.

² *Jucunda* is an adjective in the Nominative Singular Feminine, to agree with its noun *pax*, according to Rule XXXIII., page 32.

³ *Est* is a verb in the Indicative mood, Present tense, Third person, Singular number, and agrees with its subject *pax*, according to Rule XXV., page 54.

⁴ *Utilis* agrees with the omitted subject *tu*, implied in the ending of the verb.

⁵ In translating English into Latin, the pupil is expected, in the arrangement of words, to imitate the order followed in the Latin Exercises. He will observe that the subject stands first, and the verb last. But sometimes the verb precedes one or more words in the sentence. Thus the sentence, *Pax jucunda est*, might be *Pax est jucunda*.

SUM WITH PREDICATE NOUN.

RULE I.—Predicate Nouns.

362. A Predicate Noun¹ denoting the same person or thing as its subject agrees with it in CASE:

Ego sum nuntius,¹ *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

MODEL FOR PARSING PREDICATE NOUNS.

Egō sūm nuntiūs, *I am a messenger.*

Nuntius is a noun (31) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *nunti*. Singular; *nuntius*, *nuntii*, *nuntio*, *nuntium*, *nuntie*, *nuntio*. Plural; *nuntii*, *nuntiōrum*, *nuntiis*, *nuntios*, *nuntii*, *nuntiis*. It is of the Masculine Gender by 45; is in the Nominative Singular, and, as a Predicate Noun, agrees in case with its subject *ego*, according to Rule I.: “A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE.”

346. I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion:

Miltiādes accūsātus est, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question:

Quis non paupertātem extimescit, *Who does not fear poverty?* Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word, — either an interrogative pronoun,

¹ Every sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.

2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject.

Thus, in the first example under the Rule, *ego*, I, is the *subject*, and *sum nuntius* is the *predicate*. When the predicate thus consists of a noun with the verb *sum*, or of a noun with a passive verb, the noun thus used is called a *predicate noun*. Accordingly, *nuntius* in the first example, and *rex* in the second, are *predicate nouns*.

adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne*, *nonne*, *num* :

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information : *Scribitne*, Is he writing ? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes* : *Nonne scribit*, Is he not writing ?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no* : *Num scribit*, Is he writing ?

EXERCISE XIX.

I. Vocabulary.

Ancūs, ī, m.	Ancus, Roman king.
Condītōr, condītōris, m.	founder.
Dēmōsthēnēs, īs, m.	Demosthenes, Athenian orator.
Ebriētās, ebriētātis, f.	drunkenness.
Graecūs, ā, ūm,	Greek, Grecian.
Graecus, ī, m.	Greek, a Greek.
Insāniā, ae, f.	insanity, madness.
Inventōr, inventōris, m.	inventor.
Mātēr, mātris, f.	mother.
Mundūs, ī, m.	world, universe.
Nonnē, interrog. part.	expects answer yes.
Nūm, interrog. part.	expects answer no.
Philōsōphiā, ae, f.	philosophy.
Rōmā, ae, f.	Rome.
Rōmānūs, ā, ūm,	Roman.
Rōmānūs, ī, m.	Roman, a Roman.
Rōmūlūs, ī, m.	Romulus, the founder of Roma.
Scīpiō, Scīpiōnis, m.	Scipio, Roman general.

II. Translate into English.^{1*}

1. Ancus² fuit³ rex⁴. 2. Nonne⁵ Romūlus rex fuērat?
3. Romūlus rex fuērat. 4. Quis condītōr Romae⁶ fuit?
5. Romūlus condītōr Romae fuit. 6. Ebriētās est insania.
7. Patria⁷ est parens omnium nostrum.⁶ 8. Graeci⁷ multā
rum artium⁸ inventōres erant. 9. Demosthēnes orātor fuit.

* For Notes to the references on this page, see page 61.

10. Num hic puer orātor erit? 11. Ille puer orātor sit.
 12. Philosophia est mater artium. 13. Cicero clarissimus⁹
 orātor fuit. 14. Cantus lusciniæ jucundissimus⁹ est.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Who¹⁰ was the king?¹¹ 2. Was not¹² Romulus king?¹¹
 3. Romulus was king. 4. Who was the leader of the
 Romans?¹¹ 5. Was not¹² Scipio the leader of the Romans?
 6. Scipio was the leader of the Romans. 7. Your brother
 is an orator. 8. This boy is my brother. 9. These boys
 will be diligent pupils. 10. These pupils will be diligent.

¹ In preparing the longer and more difficult sentences in this and in the subsequent exercises, it is recommended that the pupil should follow the Suggestions which are inserted in this volume, page 143, and which are intended to aid him in discerning the *process* by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence.

² See Rule III. page 57.

³ See Rule XXXV. page 54. The verb sometimes precedes the Predicate Noun, as in this sentence; and sometimes follows it, as in several of the following sentences.

⁴ *Rex* is a *Predicate Noun*, denoting the same person as its subject *Ancus*, and is therefore in the Nominative, to agree with that subject in case, according to Rule I. page 59.

⁵ See 346, II. 1 above.

⁶ Genitive, according to Rule XVI. page 22.

⁷ In this sentence, before turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, notice carefully the endings of the several words in accordance with Suggestion IV. What parts of speech do you find? What cases? What mood, tense, number, and person?

In accordance with Suggestion V., what order will you follow in looking out the words in the Vocabulary?

⁸ *Artium* depends upon *inventōres*.

⁹ In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *clarissimus* and *jucundissimus* (162)?

¹⁰ See 188.

¹¹ See Rule I.

¹² *Nonne*. See 346 II. 1.



FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

205. Amo, *I love.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
āmō,	āmāre,	āmāvī,	āmātūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I love, am loving, do love.

SINGULAR.

āmō,	<i>I love,</i>
āmās,	<i>thou lovest,</i>
āmāt,	<i>he loves ;</i>

PLURAL.

āmāmūs,	<i>we love,</i>
āmātīs,	<i>you love,</i>
āmant,	<i>they love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I loved, was loving, did love.

āmābām,	<i>I was loving,</i>	āmābāmūs,	<i>we were loving,</i>
āmābās,	<i>thou wast loving,</i>	āmābātīs,	<i>you were loving,</i>
āmābāt,	<i>he was loving ;</i>	āmābant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will love.

āmābō,	<i>I shall love,</i>	āmābīmūs,	<i>we shall love,</i>
āmābīs,	<i>thou wilt love,</i>	āmābītīs,	<i>you will love,</i>
āmābīt,	<i>he will love ;</i>	āmābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

PERFECT.

I loved, have loved.

āmāvī,	<i>I have loved,</i>	āmāvīmūs,	<i>we have loved,</i>
āmāvistī,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>	āmāvistīs,	<i>you have loved,</i>
āmāvīt,	<i>he has loved ;</i>	āmāvērunt, ērē,	<i>they have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I had loved.

āmāvērām,	<i>I had loved,</i>	āmāvērāmūs,	<i>we had loved,</i>
āmāvērās,	<i>thou hadst loved,</i>	āmāvērātīs,	<i>you had loved,</i>
āmāvērāt,	<i>he had loved ;</i>	āmāvērant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have loved.

āmāvērō,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>	āmāvērīmūs,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
āmāvērīs,	<i>thou wilt have loved,</i>	āmāvērītīs,	<i>you will have loved,</i>
āmāvērīt,	<i>he will have loved ;</i>	āmāvērint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can love.

SINGULAR.

āmēm,	<i>I may love,</i>
āmēs,	<i>thou mayst love;</i>
āmēt,	<i>he may love;</i>

PLURAL.

āmēmūs,	<i>we may love,</i>
āmētīs,	<i>you may love,</i>
āment,	<i>they may love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should love.

āmārēm,	<i>I might love,</i>
āmārēs,	<i>thou mightst love,</i>
āmārēt,	<i>he might love;</i>

āmārēmūs,	<i>we might love,</i>
āmārētīs,	<i>you might love,</i>
āmārent,	<i>they might love.</i>

PERFECT.

I may or can have loved.

āmāvērīm,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
āmāvērīs,	<i>thou mayst have loved,</i>
āmāvērīt,	<i>he may have loved;</i>

āmāvērīmūs,	<i>we may have loved,</i>
āmāvērītīs,	<i>you may have loved,</i>
āmāvērīnt,	<i>they may have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have loved.

āmāvissēm,	<i>I might have loved,</i>
āmāvissēs,	<i>thou mightst have loved,</i>
āmāvissēt,	<i>he might have loved;</i>

āmāvissēmūs,	<i>we might have loved,</i>
āmāvissētīs,	<i>you might have loved,</i>
āmāvissent,	<i>they might have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. āmā,	<i>love thou;</i>
FUT. āmātō,	<i>thou shalt love,</i>
āmātō,	<i>he shall love;</i>

āmātē,	<i>love ye.</i>
āmātōtē,	<i>ye shall love,</i>
āmantō,	<i>they shall love.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRES. āmārē,	<i>to love.</i>
PERF. āmāvissē,	<i>to have loved.</i>
FUT. āmātūrūs ¹ essē,	<i>to be about to love.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. āmans, ²	<i>loving.</i>
FUT. āmātūrūs, ¹	<i>about to love.</i>

GERUND.

Gen. āmandī,	<i>of loving,</i>
Dat. āmandō,	<i>for loving,</i>
Acc. āmandūm,	<i>loving,</i>
Abl. āmandō,	<i>by loving.</i>

SUPINE.

Acc. āmātūm,	<i>to love,</i>
Abl. āmātū,	<i>to love, be loved.</i>

¹ Decline like *bonus*, 148.

² Decline like *prudens*, 153.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

206. Amor, *I am loved.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
ămōr,	ămārī,	ămătūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am loved.

SINGULAR.

ămōr
ămārīs, or rē
ămătūr;

PLURAL.

ămāmūr
ămāmīnī
ămantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was loved.

ămābār
ămābārīs, or rē
ămābātūr;

ămābāmūr
ămābāmīnī
ămābantūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be loved.

ămābōr
ămābōrīs, or rē
ămābītūr;

ămābīmūr
ămābīmīnī
ămābuntūr.

PERFECT.

I have been or was loved.

ămătūs sūm¹
ămătūs ēs
ămătūs est;

ămătī sūmūs
ămătī estīs
ămătī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been loved.

ămătūs ērām¹
ămătūs ērās
ămătūs ērāt;

ămătī ērāmūs
ămătī ērātīs
ămătī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been loved.

ămătūs ērō¹
ămătūs ērīs
ămătūs ērīt;

ămătī ērīmūs
ămătī ērītīs
ămătī ērunt.

¹ *Fui, fuisti, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sum, es, etc.*; thus *amātus fui* for *amātus sum*. So *fueram, fuēras, etc.*, for *ērām, ērās, etc.*; also *fuēro, fuēris, etc.*, for *ērō, ērīs, etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be loved.

SINGULAR.

ămēr
ămērīs, or rē
ămētūr;

PLURAL.

ămēmūr
ămēmīnī
ămentūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be loved.

ămārēr
ămārērīs, or rē
ămārētūr;

ămārēmūr
ămārēmīnī
ămărentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been loved.

ămătūs sīm¹
ămătūs sis
ămătūs sīt;

ămătī sīmūs
ămătī sītīs
ămătī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been loved.

ămătūs essēm¹
ămătūs essēs
ămătūs essēt;

ămătī essēmūs
ămătī essētīs
ămătī essent.

(IMPERATIVE.)

PRES. ămārē, be thou loved; | ămămīnī, be ye loved.

FUT. ămătōr, thou shalt be loved; | ămantōr, they shall be loved.
ămătōr, he shall be loved;

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES ămārī, to be loved.

PERF. ămătūs essē, to have been
loved.

FUT. ămătūm irī, to be about to
be loved.

PERF. ămătūs, having been loved.

FUT. ămandūs, to be loved.

¹ *Fuërim, fuëris, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sim, sis, etc.* So also *fuissem, fuisses, etc.*, for *essem, esses, etc.*

MODELS FOR PARSING REGULAR VERBS.

1. *With Subject.*

Vos laudāvistis, *You have praised.*

Laudavistis is a transitive verb (192, 193) of the First Conjugation (201), from *laudo*; STEM, *laud*. Principal Parts: *laudo, laudāre, laudāvi, laudātum*. Inflection of Tense: *laudāvi, laudavisti, laudāvit, laudavimus, laudavistis, laudavērunt, or laudavēre*. The form *laudavistis* is found in the *Active* voice, *Indicative* mood, *Perfect* tense, *Second* person, *Plural* number, and agrees with its subject *vos*, according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

2. *Without Subject.*

Laudāvistis, *You have praised.*

This is parsed like *laudavistis*, above, except that it agrees with *vos*, implied in the ending *istis*; while *laudavistis*, above, agrees with *vos* expressed.

FIRST CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Vitūpĕrĕ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	<i>to blame.</i>
Laudŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	<i>to praise.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amo, amābam, amābo.¹ 2. Amas, amābas, amābis.
3. Amat, amant.¹ 4. Amābat, amābant. 5. Amābit, amā-

¹ The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe in what they are *alike*, and in what they are *unlike*. Thus *amo, amābam, amābo*, have the letters *am*

bunt.¹ 6. Amāmus, amabāmus, amabīmus. 7. Amāvi, amavēram, amavēro. 8. Amāvit, amavērat, amavērit. 9. Amāvi, amavīmus. 10. Amavēram, amāverāmus. 11. Amavēro, amaverīmus. 12. Amem, amārem, amavērim, amavissem. 13. Amēmus, amarēmus, amaverīmus, amāvissēmus. 14. Amet, ament. 15. Amāret, amārent. 16. Amavērit, amavērint. 17. Amavisset, amavissent. 18. Ama, amāte, amatōte. 19. Amāto, amanto.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I praise, I was praising, I will praise. 2. He praises, they praise. 3. He will praise, they will praise. 4. He was praising, they were praising. 5. You were praising, you will praise, you praise. 6. He has loved, he had loved, he will have loved. 7. I have praised, I had praised, I shall have praised. 8. He may love, they may love. 9. Let him praise, let them praise. 10. He would blame, they would blame. 11. I should have praised, we should have praised. 12. Praise thou, praise ye.

FIRST CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Amor, amābar, amābor. 2. Amāris, amabāris, amabēris. 3. Amātur, amantur. 4. Amabātur, amabantur.

(the stem, 203) in common; but they differ from each other in the endings,—o, ābam, ābo. In the forms *amat*, *amant*, there is a still closer resemblance: not only is the stem *am* common to both, but the endings have the letters *at* in common; or, in other words, the plural ending *ant* differs from the singular ending *at* only in inserting *n*: AT, ANT.

¹ Here the pupil will observe that the plural ending *ābunt* differs from the singular ending *ābit*, not only in inserting *n* before *t*, but also in changing *i* into *u*: ABIT, ABUNT.

5. Amabitur, amabuntur. 6. Amāmur, amabāmur, amabimur. 7. Amātus¹ sum, amātus eram, amātus ero. 8. Amātus es, amātus eras, amātus eris. 9. Amātus est, amāti¹ sunt. 10. Amātus erat, amāti erant. 11. Amātus erit, amāti erunt. 12. Amer, amārer, amātus sim, amātus essem. 13. Amēmur, amarēmur, amāti simus, amāti essēmus. 14. Amētur, amentur. 15. Amarētur, amarentur. 16. Amātus sit, amāti sint. 17. Amātus esset, amāti essent. 18. Amātor, amator.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is praised, they are praised. 2. He was praised, they were praised. 3. He will be praised, they will be praised. 4. I am blamed, I was blamed, I shall be blamed. 5. You are loved, you are praised. 6. You were loved, you were praised. 7. You will be loved, you will be praised. 8. I have been blamed, you have been praised. 9. I had been blamed, you had been praised. 10. I shall have been blamed, you will have been praised. 11. You may be blamed, you might be blamed. 12. He would have been blamed, they would have been praised. 13. Let him be praised, let them be praised. 14. Be thou praised, be ye praised.

¹ The learner will observe, that, when the verb and the subject (expressed or implied) are in the Singular, the participle (*amātus*), which forms one element of the verb, is also in the Singular; and that, when the verb and the subject are in the Plural, the participle (*amāti*) is also in the Plural.

The form of the participle also varies with the *gender* of the subject, as well as with its *number*. Thus, if the subject is Masculine, the participle will be *amātus* in the Singular, and *amāti* in the Plural; if Feminine, *amāta* in the Singular, and *amātae* in the Plural; and, if Neuter, *amātum* in the Singular, and *amāta* in the Plural. Thus the participle in the compound tenses (i.e., in those which are made up of the participle and the auxiliary *sum*) agrees with the subject in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, like an adjective, according to Rule XXXV. 1, note.

FIRST CONJUGATION — BOTH VOICES.

EXERCISE XXII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Laudo, laudor.¹ 2. Laudābo, laudābor.² 3. Laudābam, laudābar.² 4. Laudem, lauder. 5. Laudārem, laudārer.² 6. Laudat, laudatur.¹ 7. Amābat, amabātur. 8. Amābit, amabītur. 9. Amet, amētur. 10. Amāret, amarētur. 11. Laudārent, laudarentur. 12. Ament, amentur. 13. Laudant, laudantur. 14. Amābant, amabantur. 15. Laudābunt, laudabuntur. 16. Amāvit, amātus est. 17. Laudavērat, laudātus erat. 18. Amavērit, amātus erit. 19. Lauda, laudāre. 20. Amāto, amātor. 21. Laudanto, laudantor.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He blames, he is blamed. 2. I was praising, I was praised. 3. You will praise, you will be praised. 4. He

¹ In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Voices, — the Active and the Passive, — and observe the difference between them. The Passive *laudor* differs from the Active *laudo* only in adding *r*; the Passive *laudābar* differs from the Active *laudābam* only in taking *r* in place of *m*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the first person of the Passive is formed from the first person of the Active by simply adding *r*; or, if the Active ends in *m*, by substituting *r* for *m*. Again: the Passive *laudatur* differs from the Active *laudat* only in adding *ur*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the third person of the Passive is formed from the third person of the Active by simply adding *ur*.

² Where must we look to find the meaning of these endings, — in the Vocabulary, or in the Grammar? and where to find the general meaning of the verb? See Suggestion II. To find the meaning of the verb to which *laudābor* belongs, for what form must we look in the Vocabulary? See Suggestion VII.

will blame, he will be blamed. 5. They will praise, they will be praised. 6. We blame, we are blamed. 7. He has praised, he has been praised. 8. They have blamed, they have been blamed. 9. He had praised, he had been praised. 10. They had blamed, they had been blamed. 11. He may praise, he may be praised. 12. He would blame, he would be blamed. 13. They may praise, they may be praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.¹

DIRECT OBJECT.

RULE V. — Direct Object.

379. The Direct Object² of an action is put in the Accusative.

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.*³ Cic. Libēra rem publicam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni salūtem dēfendite, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

¹ It is thought advisable that the pupil should now commence a review of the grammatical forms which he has already learned. Accordingly, this Exercise will involve nouns of the First and of the Second Declension. The pupil should therefore carefully review those Declensions (42, 45). In connection with the subsequent Exercises, it is expected that the other Declensions and the other Grammatical forms will be reviewed in order, as will be indicated in the respective headings which precede the several Exercises.

² The *Direct Object* of an action is generally the *object*, person, or thing, on which the action is *directly* exerted; as, *salūtem*, safety, in the third example; *defend* (what?) *the safety*. But the *Direct Object* is sometimes the *effect* of the action, i.e. the object produced by it; as, *mundum*, world, in the first example, — *made the world*.

³ In English, the object follows the verb; thus, in this example, *world* follows *made*; but in Latin the object usually precedes the verb: thus *mundum* precedes *aedificāvit*. So also, in the third example, *salūtem* precedes *dēfendite*; but sometimes the object follows the verb: thus in the second example, *rem publicam* follows *libēra*.

MODEL FOR PARSING DIRECT OBJECTS.

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.*

Mundum is a noun (31) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *mund*. Singular: *mundus*, *mundi*, *modo*, *mundum*, *monde*, *modo*. Plural: *mundi*, *mundorum*, *mundis*, *mundos*, *mundi*, *mundis*. It is of the Masculine gender, by 45; is in the Accusative Singular; and is the Direct Object of the transitive verb *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.: "The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative."

EXERCISE XXIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aedificō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to build.</i>
Arō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to plough.</i>
Cantō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to sing.</i>
Itāliā, ae, f.	<i>Italy.</i>
Libērō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to liberate.</i>
Rēnōvō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to renew.</i>
Spērō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to hope.</i>
Tarquīniūs, ii, m.	<i>Tarquinius, Roman king.</i>
Thēmistōclēs, is, m.	<i>Themistocles, Athenian commander.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Lusciniam laudo.*¹ 2. *Lusciniam laudāmus.* 3. *Luscinias laudat.* 4. *Luscinias laudent.* 5. *Luscinia laudātur.* 6. *Lusciniae laudentur.* 7. *Patriam amāmus.* 8. *Pro patriā*² *pugnabimus.* 9. *Nonne*³ *Themistōcles patriam liberāvit?* 10. *Patriam liberāvit.* 11. *Italiam liberāverunt.* 12. *Italia liberāta*⁴ *est.* 13. *Tarquīniūs templum aedificā-*

¹ *Lusciniam* is the *Direct Object* of *laudo*, according to Rule V.

² See Rule XXXII. page 24.

³ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

⁴ For agreement of participle with subject, see Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

vit. 14. Templum aedificābat. 15. Templa aedificavērant. 16. Templa aedificāta erant. 17. Templum aedificātum crit. 18. Puērū laudabāmus. 19. Puēri laudāti sunt. 20. Nonne¹ bellum renovātum est?

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The nightingale is singing. 2. The nightingales are singing. 3. The nightingales will sing. 4. The boys have been praised. 5. Did you not¹ praise the boys?² 6. We praised the boys. 7. The boys will be praised. 8. Have we not¹ liberated Italy? 9. You have liberated Italy. 10. We will liberate the country. 11. We were ploughing the field. 12. Will you plough the field? 13. The field will be ploughed.

FIRST CONJUGATION—THIRD DECLENSION.³

ADVERBS.

RULE LI.—Use of Adverbs.

582. Adverbs⁴ qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS:

Sāpientes feliciter⁴ vivunt, *The wise live happily.* Cic. Fācile⁴ doctissimus, *unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. Haud⁴ āliter, *not otherwise.* Virg.

¹ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

² The Latin word for *boys* in this sentence will be in the Accusative, according to Rule V., and will precede the verb.

³ The pupil should now review the Third Declension (48–54).

⁴ The Adverb is, therefore, the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. *Feliciter*, happily, is an adverb qualifying the verb *vivunt*, live (*live happily*). *Fācile*, easily, unquestionably, is an adverb qualifying the adjective *doctissimus*, the most learned (*easily*, i.e. *unquestionably* the most learned). *Haud*, not, is an adverb qualifying the adverb *āliter*, otherwise (*not otherwise*). The adverb in Latin usually stands directly before the word which it qualifies, as in these examples.

MODEL FOR PARSING ADVERBS.

Sāpientēs felicitēr vivunt, *The wise live happily.*

Felicitēr is an adverb, and qualifies *vivunt*, according to Rule LI.:
 “Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS.”

EXERCISE XXIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Elōquentiā, ae, f.	<i>eloquence.</i>
Expugnō, ārcē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to take, take by storm.</i>
Fortitēr, adv.	<i>bravely.</i>
Jūventūs, jūventūtis, f.	<i>youth.</i>
Ornō, ārcē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to adorn, be an ornament to.</i>
Piētās, piētātis, f.	<i>filial affection, piety, duty.</i>
Pugnō, ārcē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to fight.</i>
Servō, ārcē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to preserve, keep, save.</i>
Volo, ārcē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to fly.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Avis volat. 2. Aves volant. 3. Nonne¹ avis cantābat? 4. Aves cantābant. 5. Rex urbem² aedificāvit. 6. Urbs aedificāta³ est. 7. Urbes aedificātae³ erunt. 8. Milites fortiter⁴ pugnāverunt. 9. Scipio⁵ milites laudāvit. 10. Scipio⁵ militū virtutem laudābat. 11. Scipiōnem laudāmus. 12. Scipio patrem servāvit. 13. Scipio urbem expugnāvit. 14. Urbs expugnāta est. 15. Milites patriam amant. 16. Milites⁵ pro patriā pugnābant. 17. Piētas puēros ornat. 18. Virtutes civitatem ornant.

¹ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

² *Urbem*, direct object of *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.

³ Why *aedificāta* in one case, and *aedificātae* in the other? Why not *aedificātus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

⁴ *Fortiter*, an Adverb qualifying *pugnāverunt*, according to Rule LI.

⁵ In what order will you look out the words in this sentence? See Suggestion V.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The birds are singing. 2. Do you not¹ love birds?²
 3. We love birds.² 4. This bird will fly. 5. Did you not¹
 save the city? 6. The soldiers saved the city. 7. Shep-
 herds love the mountains. 8. We love virtue. 9. Is not
 virtue loved? 10. It is loved. 11. Do not the citizens
 praise the king? 12. They praise the king. 13. The king
 will be praised. 14. The virtue of the king is praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.³

EXERCISE XXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Convōcō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to assemble, call together.</i>
Duplicō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to double, increase.</i>
Dux, dūcis, <i>m.</i>	<i>general, leader.</i>
Fidēs, fidēi, <i>f.</i>	<i>faith, fidelity, word,⁴ promise.</i>
Fūgō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to rout.</i>
Hōmō, hōmīnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>man.</i>
Sēnātūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>senate.</i>
Stimulō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to stimulate.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Homīnes⁵ cantum lusciniæ⁶ laudant. 2. Cantus lus-
 ciniaē laudātur. 3. Romūlus exercitū fugat. 4. Nonne

¹ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

² Remember that the *object* in Latin usually precedes the verb.

³ The pupil should now review these Declensions (116, 119).

⁴ To keep one's word, *fidem servāre*: I keep my word, *fidem meam servo*, or *fidem servo*, as the Latin possessives, *meus*, my, *tuus*, your, etc., when not emphatic, are often omitted; when expressed, they usually follow their nouns.

⁵ In this sentence, what order will you follow, in accordance with Suggestion V., in looking out the words in the Vocabulary? In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *homīnes* (51, II.), *mīlites* (50, II.), *stimulāvit* (205)?

⁶ See Rule XVI. page 22.

exercitum fugavimus? 5. Exercitus fugatus est. 6. Exercitus fugatus erit. 7. Consul senatum convocavit. 8. Senatus convocatus est. 9. Senatus consulem laudavit. 10. Spes victoriae milites stimulavit. 11. Numerum dierum duplicavi. 12. Numerus dierum duplicatus est.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The boy has kept his word.¹ 2. Will you not keep your word? 3. We will keep our word. 4. The consul praised the fidelity of the citizens. 5. Will not the fidelity of the citizens be praised? 6. Will not the citizens praise the fidelity of the army? 7. They have praised the fidelity of the army. 8. Did not the general praise the army? 9. He praised the army. 10. The army will be praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — ADJECTIVES.²

EXERCISE XXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Ampliō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to enlarge.</i>
Condemnō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to condemn.</i>
Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Hannibal, Carthaginian general.</i>
Innōcens, innōcentīs, -	<i>innocent.</i>
Nōbilis, ē,	<i>noble.</i>
Nōvūs, ā, ūm,	<i>new.</i>
Occūpō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to occupy.</i>
Pūnicūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Carthaginian, Punic.</i>

¹ See note 4, preceding page.

² The pupil should now review Adjectives (146-162).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rex urbem novam¹ ampliābat. 2. Urbem novam ampliābunt. 3. Rex urbem pulchram¹ ampliavērat. 4. Urbs pulchra servāta² est. 5. Hannībal multas civitatēs occupāvit. 6. Judīces homīnem innocentissimum³ condemnāvērunt. 7. Num Punīcum bellum renovātum est? 8. Nonne Punīcum bellum renovātum est? 9. Punīcum bellum renovātum est. 10. Romāni nobilissimas³ urbes expugnāvērunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not the brave soldiers save the city? 2. The brave soldiers will save the beautiful city. 3. The noble city will be saved. 4. We praise good boys. 5. Good boys will be praised. 6. Do you not praise diligent pupils? 7. Diligent pupils are praised. 8. The citizens praise the brave soldiers.

FIRST CONJUGATION—PRONOUNS.⁴

EXERCISE XXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aliquīs, āliquā, āliquīd or āliquōd,	<i>some one, somebody.</i>
Dēlectō, āřě, āyī, ātŭm,	<i>to delight.</i>
Dilīgentiā, ae, f.	<i>diligence.</i>
Nōn, <i>adv.</i>	<i>not.</i>
Sālūtō, āřě, āvī, ātŭm,	<i>to salute.</i>
Suūs, ā, ūm,	<i>his, her, its, their.</i>

¹ See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

² Why *servāta* rather than *servātus*? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, p. 54.

³ In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 162.

⁴ The pupil should now review Pronouns (182-191).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis hanc¹ urbem servābit? 2. Hanc urbem pulchram servabimus. 3. Quis te² salutāvit? 4. Pater meus¹ te salutāt. 5. Haec¹ vita te delectat. 6. Philosophia nos² delectat. 7. Omnia animalia se² amant. 8. Fratres tui¹ laudantur. 9. Fratres mei laudāti sunt. 10. Puer parentes suos³ amat. 11. Puēri boni parentes suos³ amant. 12. Parentes nostros amāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you blame me? 2. We do not⁴ blame you. 3. Whom do you blame? 4. We blame your brother. 5. This book delights me. 6. These books delighted us. 7. Did not⁵ your father praise you? 8. He praised us. 9. Did not⁵ some one praise your diligence? 10. Our parents praised our diligence. 11. Did your brother blame you? 12. He did not⁴ blame me. 13. He blamed himself. 14. He will be blamed.

¹ These Pronouns are all used as adjectives, and agree with their nouns like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. p. 32. Pronouns thus used as adjectives generally precede their nouns; but the Possessive Pronouns, *meus, tuus*, etc. (185), generally follow their nouns, as in this Exercise.

² Personal Pronouns, it will be remembered, are used as substantives (184). They are accordingly governed like any other substantives. See Rule V. p. 70. Observe that the object precedes the verb.

³ The pupil will observe that *suos* in the tenth sentence must be rendered *his*, while in the eleventh it must be rendered *their*. Thus the meaning of the Possessive *suus* depends in part upon the *number* of the word to which it refers. It must be rendered *his* (*her, its*) when that word, as *puer* in the tenth sentence, is in the *Singular*; but it must be rendered *their* when that word, as *puēri* in the eleventh sentence, is in the *Plural*.

⁴ When a verb with a direct object has also an adverb qualifying it, the usual order is *Object, Adverb, Verb*; but the adverb *non*, *not*, may stand either *before* or *after* the object.

⁵ *Nonne*.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

207. Moneo, *I advise.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
mōneō,	mōnēre,	mōnuī,	mōnitūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I advise.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

mōneō

mōnēmūs

mōnēs

mōnētīs

mōnēt;

mōnent.

IMPERFECT.

I was advising.

mōnēbām

mōnēbāmūs

mōnēbās

mōnēbātīs

mōnēbāt;

mōnēbant.

FUTURE.

I shall or will advise.

mōnēbō

mōnēbīmūs

mōnēbīs

mōnēbītīs

mōnēbīt;

mōnēbunt.

PERFECT.

I advised or have advised.

mōnuī

mōnuīmūs

mōnuistī

mōnuistīs

mōnuīt;

mōnuērunt, or ērō.

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised.

mōnuērām

mōnuērāmūs

mōnuērās

mōnuērātīs

mōnuērāt;

mōnuērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have advised.

mōnuērō

mōnuērīmūs

mōnuērīs

mōnuērītīs

mōnuērīt;

mōnuērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can advise.

SINGULAR.

möncām
möncās
möncāt ;

PLURAL.

möncāmūs
möncātīs
möncant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should advise.

mönērēm
mönērēs
mönērēt ;

mönērēmūs
mönērētīs
mönērent.

PERFECT.

I may have advised.

mönuērīm
mönuērīs
mönuērīt ;

mönuērīmūs
mönuērītīs
mönuērint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have advised.

mönuissēm
mönuissēs
mönuissēt ;

mönuissēmūs
mönuissētīs
mönuissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mönē, advise thou ;

mönētē, advise ye.

FUT. mönētō, thou shalt advise,
mönētō, he shall advise ;

mönētōtē, ye shall advise,
mönentō, they shall advise

INFINITIVE.

PRES. mönērē, to advise.
PERF. mönuissē, to have advised.
FUT. mönītūrūs essē, to be
about to advise.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mönens, advising.
FUT. mönītūrūs, about to advise.

GERUND.

Gen. mönendī, of advising,
Dat. mönendō, for advising,
Acc. mönendūm, advising,
Abl. mönendō, by advising.

SUPINE.

Acc. mönītūm, to advise,
Abl. mönītū, to advise, be advised.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

208. Moneor, *I am advised.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
mōneōr,	mōnēri,	mōnītūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am advised.

SINGULAR.

mōneōr
mōnērīs, or rē
mōnētūr;

PLURAL.

mōnēmūr
mōnēmīnī
mōnentūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was advised.

mōnēbār
mōnēbārīs, or rē
mōnēbātūr;

mōnēbāmūr
mōnēbāmīnī
mōnēbantūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be advised.

mōnēbōr
mōnēbērīs, or rē
mōnēbītūr;

mōnēbīmūr
mōnēbīmīnī
mōnēbuntūr.

PERFECT.

I have been or was advised.

mōnītūs sūm¹
mōnītūs ēs
mōnītūs est;

mōnītī sūmūs
mōnītī estīs
mōnītī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been advised.

mōnītūs ērām¹
mōnītūs ērās
mōnītūs erāt;

mōnītī ērāmus
mōnītī erātīs
mōnītī erant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been advised.

mōnītūs ērō¹
mōnītūs erīs
mōnītūs erīt;

mōnītī erīmūs
mōnītī erītīs
mōnītī erunt.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mōneār	mōneāmūr
mōneārīs, or rē	mōneāmīnī
mōneātūr ;	mōneantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be advised.

mōnērēr	mōnērēmūr
mōnērērīs, or rē	mōnērēmīnī
mōnērētūr ;	mōnērentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been advised.

mōnītūs sīm ¹	mōnītī sīmūs
mōnītūs sīs	mōnītī sītīs
mōnītūs sīt ;	mōnītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been advised.

mōnītūs essēm ¹	mōnītī essēmūs
mōnītūs essēs	mōnītī essētīs
mōnītūs essēt ;	mōnītī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnērē, be thou advised ;	mōnēmīnī, be ye advised.
FUT. mōnētōr, thou shalt be advised,	
mōnētōr, he shall be advised ;	mōnentōr, they shall be advised.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōnērī, to be advised,	
PERF. mōnītūs essē, to have been advised,	PERF. mōnītūs, advised,
FUT. mōnītūm irī, to be about to be advised.	FUT. mōnendūs, to be advised.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SECOND CONJUGATION — ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Mōneō, mōnērē, mōnui, mōnītūm,	<i>to advise.</i>
Pāreō, pārērē, pārui, pārītūm,	<i>to obey.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneo, monēbam, monēbo.¹ 2. Moneo, monētis. 3. Monet, monent. 4. Monēmus, monebāmus, monebīmus. 5. Monēbant, monēbunt. 6. Monui, monuēram, monuēro. 7. Monuīmus, monuerāmus, monuerīmus. 8. Monuit, monuērunt. 9. Monuērat, monuērant. 10. Monuērit, monuērint. 11. Moneam, monērem, monuērim, monuissē. 12. Moneat, moneant. 13. Monēret, monērent. 14. Monuērit, monuērint. 15. Monuisset, monuissent.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. You advise, you were advising, you will advise. 2. He obeys, they obey. 3. He was obeying, they were obeying. 4. He will advise, they will advise. 5. He has obeyed, he had obeyed, he will have obeyed. 6. They have advised, they had advised, they will have advised. 7. I have advised, we have advised. 8. I had advised, I had obeyed. 9. He may advise, he may obey.

¹ The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe wherein they differ from each other.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXIX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cantǎ, āřě, āvī, ātŭm,	<i>to sing.</i>
Spērǎ, āřě, āvī. ātŭm,	<i>to hope.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sperat, paret.¹ 2. Sperant, parent. 3. Sperāmus, parēmus. 4. Sperābat, parēbat. 5. Sperābant, parēbant. 6. Sperābam, parēbam. 7. Sperabāmus, párebāmus. 8. Sperabīmus, parebīmus. 9. Sperābo, parēbo. 10. Sperāvi, parui. 11. Speravěram, paruěram. 12. Speravěro, paruěro. 13. Speravīmus, paruīmus. 14. Speravěrat, paruěrat. 15. Speravěrint, paruěrint. 16. Sperāte, parēte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I sing, I advise. 2. I was singing, I was advising. 3. I will sing, I will advise. 4. He will hope, he will obey. 5. They will hope, they will obey. 6. They were singing, they were advising. 7. They sing, they advise. 8. He has hoped, he has obeyed. 9. They have hoped, they have obeyed. 10. He had sung, he had obeyed. 11. They had sung, they had obeyed. 12. We had hoped, we had advised. 13. We would sing, we would obey.

¹ In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Conjugations, — the First and the Second, — and should carefully observe the difference between them.

SECOND CONJUGATION — ACTIVE VOICE.
OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XXX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aurūm, ī, <i>n.</i>	<i>gold.</i>
Flōs, flōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>flower.</i>
Hābeō, hābēre, hābuī, hābitūm,	<i>to have, hold.</i>
Mēreō, mērere, mēruī, mēritūm,	<i>to deserve, merit.</i>
Philōsōphūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>philosopher.</i>
Pondūs, pondēris, <i>n.</i>	<i>weight, mass.</i>
Praebeō, praebere, praebuī, praebitūm,	<i>to furnish, give.</i>
Praemiūm, ī, <i>n.</i>	<i>reward.</i>
Tāceō, tācere, tācuī, tācītūm,	<i>to be silent.</i>
Terreō, terrere, terruī, terrītūm,	<i>to frighten, terrify.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Puer librum habet. 2. Puēri libros habent. 3. Libros utiles¹ habēmus. 4. Librum utīlem habuisti. 5. Nonne bonum¹ amīcum habēbis? 6. Bonum amīcum habēbo. 7. Bonos amīcos habuīmus. 8. Rex amīcos habēbat. 9. Rex aurum habēbat. 10. Rex² magnum auri pondus³ habuērat. 11. Gloriam veram habebītis. 12. Ver praebet flores. 13. Ver praebēbit flores. 14. Philōsōphus tacēbat. 15. Discipūlus praemium meret.

¹ Observe that the Latin adjective may either precede or follow its noun; though it seems more frequently to follow, unless it is emphatic.

² In this sentence, endeavor, in accordance with Suggestion IV., to discover the *subject*, *verb*, and *object*, before looking out the words in the Vocabulary. In what order will you look out the words in accordance with Suggestion V.?

³ When a noun is qualified by both an adjective and a genitive, as *pondus* by *magnum* and *auri*, the adjective usually precedes both nouns, and is followed by the genitive, as in this example: *magnum auri pondus*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who has my book? 2. I have your book. 3. Which book have you? 4. I have three¹ books. 5. My brother has ten books. 6. The king had a golden crown. 7. Did he not have many friends? 8. He had many friends. 9. You will have true friends. 10. The pupils are silent.² 11. Will you not be silent? 12. We will be silent.

SECOND CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXI.

I. *Translate into English.*

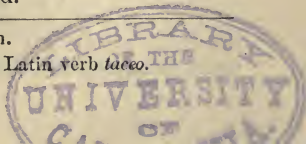
1. Moneor, monēbar, monēbor. 2. Monēmur, monebāmur, monebīmur. 3. Moneātur, moneantur. 4. Monerētur, monerentur. 5. Monītus est, monīti sunt. 6. Monītus erat, monīti erant. 7. Monītus erit, monīti erunt. 8. Monētor, monentor. 9. Monet, monētur. 10. Monent, monentur. 11. Monēbat, Monebātur. 12. Monēbant, monebantur. 13. Monēbit, monebītur. 14. Monēbunt, monebuntur. 15. Monēmus, monēmur. 16. Monebāmus, Monebāmur. 17. Monebīmus, monebīmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is advised, they are advised. 2. I was terrified, we were terrified. 3. He will be advised, they will be advised. 4. You have been terrified, I have been terrified. 5. He had been advised, he had been terrified. 6. I shall have been advised, I shall have been terrified. 7. I advise, I am advised. 8. I was advising, I was advised. 9. I shall advise, I shall be advised. 10. They terrify, they are terrified. 11. They were terrifying, they were terrified. 12. They will terrify, they will be terrified.

¹ Place the Numeral *before* the noun.

² *Are silent* is to be rendered by the Latin verb *taceo*.



FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Admōneō, admōnēre, admōnuī, admōnītum,	<i>to admonish.</i>
Amō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to love.</i>
Invitō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to invite.</i>
Laudō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to praise.</i>
Terreō, terrēre, terrui, terrītum,	<i>to terrify.</i>
Vitūpērō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to blame.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitātur, terrētur. 2. Invitantur, terrentur. 3. Invitāmur, terrēmur. 4. Invitabāmur, terrebāmur. 5. Invitabātur, terrebātur. 6. Invitabantur, terrebantur. 7. Invitabuntur, terrebuntur. 8. Invitabitur, terrebitur. 9. Invitābor, terrēbor. 10. Invitātus sum, terrītus sum. 11. Invitāti sumus, terrīti sumus. 12. Invitātus est, terrītus est. 13. Invitāti sunt, terrīti sunt. 14. Invitāti erant, terrīti erant. 15. Invitātus erat, terrītus erat.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am invited, I am admonished. 2. You are invited, you are admonished. 3. He was praised, he was advised. 4. They were praised, they were advised. 5. You will be invited, you will be admonished. 6. He has been blamed, he has been terrified. 7. They had been loved, they had been admonished. 8. They will have been invited, they

will have been admonished. 9. I may be invited, I may be admonished. 10. I should be invited, I should be admonished.

SECOND CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Apūd, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>near, before, among.</i>
Exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitum,	<i>to exercise, train.</i>
Frāter, frātris, <i>m.</i>	<i>brother.</i>
Māgistēr, māgistrī, <i>m.</i>	<i>master, teacher.</i>
Mēmōriā, <i>ac, f.</i>	<i>memory.</i>
Puēr, puērī, <i>m.</i>	<i>boy.</i>
Quis, quae, quid, ¹	<i>who, which, what?</i>
Rectē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>rightly.</i>
Tuūs, ā, ūm,	<i>your, yours.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis monētur? 2. Nonne puer monētur? 3. Puer recte monētur. 4. Puērī recte monentur. 5. Discipūli recte monīti sunt. 6. Discipūlus recte monītus est. 7. Frater tuus recte admonītus erit. 8. Fratres tui recte admonīti erunt. 9. Nonne admonīti sumus? 10. Recte admonīti sumus. 11. Memoria exercētur. 12. Memoria

¹ For the declension of the Interrogative Pronoun *quis*, see 188.

exerceātur.¹ 13. Memoria exercebĭtur. 14. Discipŭli apud magistros exercentur.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Were not the boys terrified? 2. They were terrified. 3. Let² the pupils be admonished. 4. They have been admonished. 5. Who will be advised? 6. These boys will be advised. 7. Has your memory been exercised? 8. My memory has been exercised. 9. Was not the general terrified? 10. The general himself³ was not terrified. 11. The soldiers were terrified.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS—MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cămillŭs, i, m.	Camillus, Roman general.
Exspectŏ, āre, āvi, ātŭm,	to await, expect.
Hostis, is, m. and f.	enemy.
Ingens, ingentis,	huge, large, great.
Lēgiŏ, lēgiŏnis, f.	legion, body of soldiers.
Nŏn, adv.	not.
Nŭmērŭs, i, m.	number.
Optŏ, āre, āvi, ātŭm,	to wish for, desire.
Pēcŭniă, ae, f.	money.

¹ *Exerceātur*; the Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*. See 196. I. 2.

² *Let be admonished* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

³ *Himself* = *ipse*. See 186.

Philōsōphūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>philosopher.</i>
Praeceptōr, praecēptōrīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>teacher.</i>
Proeliūm, īi, <i>n.</i>	<i>battle.</i>
Rōmānūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Roman, a Roman.</i>
Sūpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to conquer.</i>
Vērēcundiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>modesty.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Camillus hostes superāvit. 2. Hostes superāti sunt.
 3. Omnes discipūli paruērānt.¹ 4. Romāni hostem expectā-
 bant. 5. Romāni² ingentem hostium numērum³ expecta-
 vērānt.¹ 6. Hostes proelium expectābant. 7. Praeceptor
 tacēbat. 8. Discipūli tacēbant. 9. Verecundia juventūtem
 ornat. 10. Philosōphus pecuniam non habet. 11. Philos-
 ōphi pecuniam non optant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are you expecting me? 2. We are expecting you.
 3. Did you not await the enemy?⁴ 4. We awaited the
 enemy. 5. Have you not a good memory? 6. I have a
 good memory. 7. Will the soldiers obey? 8. The brave
 soldiers will obey. 9. Camillus had an army. 10. He
 praised the army. 11. Did you advise the boy? 12. We
 advised the boys. 13. Were not the enemy put to flight?⁵
 14. They were put to flight.

¹ In accordance with Suggestion VII. 3, for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 205, 207.

² Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

³ *Ingentem hostium numērum*, for arrangement see note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX.

⁴ Put the Latin word in the plural.

⁵ *Put to flight* is to be rendered by a single Latin verb.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

209. Rego, *I rule.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
rēgō,	rēgērē,	rexī,	rectūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I rule.

SINGULAR.

rēgō
rēgis
rēgit ;

PLURAL.

rēgimūs
rēgitis
rēgunt.

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling.

rēgebām
rēgebās
rēgebāt ;

rēgebāmūs
rēgebātis
rēgebant.

FUTURE.

I shall or will rule.

rēgām
rēgēs
rēgēt ;

rēgēmūs
rēgētis
rēgent.

PERFECT.

I ruled or have ruled.

rexī
rexistī
rexīt ;

reximūs
rexistis
rexērunt, or ērē.

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled.

rexērām
rexērās
rexērāt ;

rexērāmūs
rexērātis
rexērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have ruled.

rexērō
rexērīs
rexērīt ;

rexērīmūs
rexērītis
rexērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can rule.

SINGULAR.

rēgām
rēgās
rēgāt ;

PLURAL.

rēgāmūs
rēgātīs
rēgant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should rule.

rēgērēm
rēgērēs
rēgēret ;

rēgērēmūs
rēgērētīs
rēgērent.

PERFECT.

I may have ruled.

rexērīm
rexērīs
rexērīt ;

rexērīmūs
rexērītīs
rexērint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have ruled.

rexissēm
rexissēs
rexissēt ;

rexissēmūs
rexissētīs
rexissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēgē, rule thou ;

| rēgītē, rule ye.

FUT. rēgītō, thou shalt rule,
rēgītō, he shall rule ;

| rēgītōtē, ye shall rule,
rēguntō, they shall rule.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. rēgērē, to rule.
PERF. rexissē, to have ruled.
FUT. rectūrūs essē, to be about
to rule.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rēgens, ruling.
FUT. rectūrūs, about to rule.

GERUND.

Gen. rēgendī, of ruling,
Dat. rēgendō, for ruling,
Acc. rēgendūm, ruling,
Abl. rēgendō, by ruling.

SUPINE.

Acc. rectūm, to rule,
Abl. rectū, to rule, be ruled.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

210. Regor, *I am ruled.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

rēgōr,

Pres. Inf.

rēgī,

Perf. Ind.

rectūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am ruled.

SINGULAR.

rēgōr

rēgēris, or rē

rēgītūr;

PLURAL.

rēgīmūr

rēgīmīnī

rēguntūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was ruled.

rēgēbār

rēgēbāris, or rē

rēgēbātūr;

rēgēbāmūr

rēgēbāmīnī

rēgēbantūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be ruled.

rēgār

rēgēris, or rē

rēgētūr;

rēgēmūr

rēgēmīnī

rēgentūr.

PERFECT.

*I have been or was ruled.*rectūs sūm¹

rectūs ēs

rectūs est;

rectī sūmūs

rectī estīs

rectī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been ruled.*rectūs ērām¹

rectūs ērās

rectūs ērāt;

rectī ērāmūs

rectī ērātīs

rectī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been ruled.*rectūs ērō¹

rectūs ēris

rectūs ērit;

rectī ērimūs

rectī ēritīs

rectī ērunt.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be ruled.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕgār	rĕgāmūr
rĕgārīs, or rĕ	rĕgāmīnī
rĕgātūr;	rĕgantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be ruled.

rĕgĕrĕr	rĕgĕrēmūr
rĕgĕrērīs, or rĕ	rĕgĕrēmīnī
rĕgĕrētūr;	rĕgĕrentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled.

rectūs sīm ¹	rectī sīmūs
rectūs sīs	rectī sītīs
rectūs sīt;	rectī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.

rectūs essēm ¹	rectī essēmūs
rectūs essēs	rectī essētīs
rectūs essēt;	rectī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rĕgĕrĕ, be thou ruled;	rĕgīmīnī, be ye ruled.
FUT. rĕgītōr, thou shalt be ruled,	
rĕgītōr, he shall be ruled;	rĕguntōr, ye shall be ruled.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rĕgī, to be ruled.	
PERF. rectūs essĕ, to have been ruled.	PERF. rectūs, ruled.
FUT. rectūm irī, to be about to be ruled.	FUT. rĕgendūs, to be ruled.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXV,

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dūcō, ěrě, duxī, ductūm,	<i>to lead.</i>
Rĕgō, ěrě, rexī, rectūm,	<i>to rule, govern.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rego, regēbam, regam. 2. Regīmus, regebāmus, regēmus. 3. Regītis, regis. 4. Regēbas, regebātis. 5. Regēbant, regēbat. 6. Reget, regent. 7. Rexērunt, rexit. 8. Rexi, rexeram, rexero. 9. Rexīmus, rexerāmus, rexerīmus. 10. Regas, regēres, rexēris, rexisses. 11. Regātis, regerētis, rexerītis, rexissētis. 12. Regam, regāmus. 13. Regerēmus, regērem. 14. Rexērit, rexerint. 15. Rexissent, rexisset. 16. Rege, regite.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He leads, he was leading, he will lead. 2. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule. 3. They lead, they rule. 4. They were leading, they were ruling. 5. They will lead, they will rule. 6. You have led, you have ruled. 7. He had led, he had ruled. 8. They had led, they had ruled. 9. He will have led, he will have ruled. 10. They may lead, they may rule. 11. He would lead, he would rule. 12. They would lead, they would rule. 13. We should have led, we should have ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS — ACTIVE
VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dicō, dicēre, dixī, dictūm,	<i>to say, tell, speak.</i>
Vocō, arē, avī, atūm,	<i>to call.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocat, tacet, dicit.¹ 2. Vocant, tacent, dicunt. 3. Vocābant, tacēbant, dicēbant. 4. Vocābo, tacēbo, dicam. 5. Vocavimus, tacuimus, diximus. 6. Vocavi, tacui, dixi. 7. Vocaverunt, tacuerunt, dixerunt. 8. Vocaverat, tacuerat, dixerat. 9. Vocaverint, tacuerint, dixerint. 10. Vocem, taceam, dicam. 11. Vocarent, tacerent, dicarent. 12. Vocāte, tacēte, dicite.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I invite, I admonish, I lead. 2. We call, we are silent, we speak. 3. We were inviting, we were admonishing, we were leading. 4. I shall call, I shall be silent, I shall speak. 5. He has invited, he has been silent, he has led. 6. He had praised, he had obeyed, he had ruled. 7. They had blamed, they had advised, they had spoken. 8. He may call, he may admonish, he may rule.

¹ In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the three Conjugations here represented, — the First, the Second, and the Third, — and should carefully observe the difference between them. The advantages of such a course are twofold: first, it teaches the pupil to distinguish the several Conjugations from each other, which is one of the most important lessons to be learned in the study of the language; and, secondly, it tends to form in him, thus early, the habit of close and accurate observation, the habit of marking differences and of tracing resemblances in kindred forms, which is of vital importance in the whole course of classical study.

THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Anīmūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>mind, passion.</i>
Bēnē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>well.</i>
Dēfectiō, dēfectiōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>eclipse.</i>
Disertē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>clearly, eloquently.</i>
Edūcō, ēdūcērē, ēduxī, ēductū,	<i>to lead forth.</i>
Indicō, indicērē, indixī, indictū,	<i>to declare.</i>
Lātinē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>in Latin.</i>
Praedicō, praedicērē, praedixī, praedictū,	<i>to predict, foretell.</i>
Sāpientēr, <i>adv.</i>	<i>wisely.</i>
Thālēs, īs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Thales, a philosopher.</i>
Tullūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Tullus, a Roman name.</i>
Vērūm, ī, <i>n.</i>	<i>truth.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Bene dixisti. 2. Nonne Cicēro in senātu dixērat? 3. Cicēro diserte dicēbat. 4. Oratōres diserte dicent. 5. Philosōphus sapienter dixit. 6. Philosōphi sapienter dixērunt. 7. Oratōres Latīne dixērunt. 8. Caesar legiōnes eduxit. 9. Hannībal exercitum in Italiā duxit. 10. Quis bellum indixit? 11. Tullus bellum indixit. 12. Thales defectiōnem solis praedixit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who will speak the truth? 2. Have we not spoken the truth? 3. You have spoken the truth. 4. Will not the general lead forth the army? 5. He has led forth the army. 6. Do you not govern your mind? 7. We govern our minds. 8. Did you predict this war? 9. We did not predict the war. 10. Who has declared war? 11. The Romans have declared war.

THIRD CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Regor, regēbar, regar. 2. Regīmur, regebāmur, regēmur. 3. Regar, regāmur. 4. Regerētur, regerentur. 5. Rectus est, rectus erat, rectus erit. 6. Recti sunt, recti erant, recti erunt. 7. Regit, regitur. 8. Regunt, reguntur. 9. Regēbat, regebātur. 10. Regēbant, regebantur. 11. Reget, regētur. 12. Regent, regentur. 13. Regimus, regimur. 14. Regebāmus, regebāmur. 15. Regēmus, regēmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is ruled, they are ruled. 2. I am ruled, I am led. 3. We are ruled, we are led. 4. He was ruled, they were ruled. 5. He will be ruled, they will be ruled. 6. We have been ruled, we have been led. 7. I lead, I am led. 8. We lead, we are led. 9. We were ruling, we were ruled. 10. He was leading, he was led. 11. They may rule, they may be ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—

PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocor, moneor, ducor. 2. Vocāmur, monēmur, ducimur. 3. Vocātur, monētur, ducitur. 4. Vocabātur, monebātur, ducebātur. 5. Vocabantur, monebantur, ducebantur. 6. Vocabuntur, monebuntur, ducentur. 7. Vocā-

tus es, monitus es, ductus es. 8. Vocāti estis, monīti estis, ducti estis. 9. Vocātus eram, monītus eram, ductus eram. 10. Vocātus erit, monītus erit, ductus erit.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is invited, he is admonished, he is led. 2. We were called, we were advised, we were ruled. 3. He will be called, he will be advised, he will be ruled. 4. He may be invited, he may be admonished, he may be led. 5. He has been called, he has been advised, he has been led. 6. They have been called, they have been advised, they have been led.

THIRD CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XL.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Mundūs, ī, m.	world.
Semper, adv.	always, ever.
Vērūm, ī, n.	truth.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Mundus regitur. 2. Omnis hic mundus semper rectus est. 3. Hic mundus semper regētur. 4. Haec civitas bene regitur. 5. Hae civitates bene reguntur. 6. Civitates rectae sunt. 7. Anīmus regātur. 8. Exercitus in Italiam ductus est. 9. Multi exercitus in Italiam ducti erant. 10. Bellum indictum¹ erat. 11. Multa bella indicta¹ sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not the army led forth? 2. The army was led forth. 3. Has not this state been well governed? 4. This

¹ Why *indictum* in one example, and *indicta* in the other? Why not rather *indictus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

state has been well governed. 5. Will not the truth be spoken? 6. The truth has been spoken. 7. Let¹ the truth always be spoken. 8. Would not war have been declared? 9. War would have been declared.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS —
MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Gallūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Gallus</i> , a proper name.
Hirundō, hirundīnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>swallow</i> .
Lūnā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>moon</i> .
Nuntiō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to proclaim, announce</i>
Sensūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>feeling, perception.</i>
Supplicium, ii, <i>n.</i>	<i>punishment.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Hirundīnes adventum veris nuntiant. 2. Hirundīnes adventum veris nuntiavērānt. 3. Discipūli laudabuntur. 4. Gallus defectiōnes solis praedixit. 5. Defectiōnes lunae praedixit. 6. Defectiōnes lunae praedicuntur. 7. Omne animal sensus habet. 8. Puēri tacēbant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. This boy has not observed the law. 2. Good citizens will observe the laws. 3. Let the laws be observed. 4. Who has your book? 5. That boy has my book. 6. You shall have my book. 7. What did you say? 8. I spoke the truth. 9. The truth would have been spoken.

¹ Let be spoken, render by the Latin Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

211. Audio, *I hear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
audiō,Pres. Inf.
audīrē,Perf. Ind.
audīvī,Supine.
audītūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

SINGULAR.

audiō

audīs

audīt;

PLURAL.

audīmūs

audītīs

audiunt.

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing.

audiēbām

audiēbās

audiēbāt;

audiēbāmūs

audiēbātīs

audiēbant.

FUTURE.

I shall or will hear.

audiām

audiēs

audiēt;

audiēmūs

audiētīs

audient.

PERFECT.

I heard or have heard.

audīvī

audīvisti

audīvīt;

audīvīmūs

audīvistīs

audivērunt, or ērō.

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

audivērām

audivērās

audiverāt;

audivērāmūs

audivērātīs

audivērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have heard.

audivērō

audivērīs

audivērīt;

audivērīmūs

audivērītīs

audivērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can hear.

SINGULAR.

audiā**m**

audiā**s**

audiā**t** ;

PLURAL.

audiā**mūs**

audiā**tīs**

audiā**nt**.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should hear.

audi**irēm**

audi**irēs**

audi**irēt** ;

audi**irēmūs**

audi**irētīs**

audi**irent**.

PERFECT.

I may have heard.

audi**verīm**

audi**verīs**

audi**verit** ;

audi**verīmūs**

audi**veritīs**

audi**verint**.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have heard.

audi**vissēm**

audi**vissēs**

audi**vissēt** ;

audi**vissēmūs**

audi**vissētīs**

audi**vissent**.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audi**i**, *hear thou ;*

FUT. audi**itō**, *thou shalt hear,*
audi**itō**, *he shall hear ;*

audi**itē**, *hear ye.*

audi**itōtē**, *ye shall hear,*
audi**untō**, *they shall hear.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. audi**irē**, *to hear.*

PERF. audi**vissē**, *to have heard.*

FUT. audi**tūrūs essē**, *to be*
about to hear.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audi**ens**, *hearing.*

FUT. audi**tūrūs**, *about to hear.*

GERUND.

Gen. audi**endi**, *of hearing.*

Dat. audi**endō**, *for hearing.*

Acc. audi**endūm**, *hearing.*

Abl. audi**endō**, *by hearing.*

SUPINE.

Acc. audi**tūm**, *to hear.*

Abl. audi**tū**, *to hear, be heard.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

212. Audior, *I am heard.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
audiōr,	audīrī,	audītūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiōr	audīmūr
audīrīs, or rē	audīmīnī
audītūr;	audiuntūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was heard.

audiēbār	audiēbāmūr
audiēbārīs, or rē	audiēbāmīnī
audiēbātūr;	audiēbāntūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be heard.

audiār	audiēmūr
audiērīs, or rē	audiēmīnī
audiētūr;	audiēntūr.

PERFECT.

I have been heard.

audītūs sūm ¹	audītī sūmūs
audītūs ēs	audītī estīs
audītūs est;	audītī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been heard.

audītūs ērām ¹	audītī ērāmūs
audītūs ērās	audītī ērātīs
audītūs ērāt;	audītī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been heard.

audītūs ērō ¹	audītī ērīmūs
audītūs ērīs	audītī ērītīs
audītūs ērīt;	audītī ērunt.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiār	audiāmūr
audiārīs, or rē	audiāmīnī
audiātūr;	audiantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be heard.

audīrēr	audīrēmūr
audīrērīs, or rē	audīrēmīnī
audīrētūr;	audīrentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been heard.

audītūs sīm ¹	audītī sīmūs
audītūs sīs	audītī sītīs
audītūs sīt;	audītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been heard.

audītūs essēm ¹	audītī essēmūs
audītūs essēs	audītī essētīs
audītūs essēt;	audītī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audīrē, be thou heard;	audīmīnī, be ye heard.
FUT. audītōr, thou shalt be heard, audītōr, he shall be heard;	audiuntōr, they shall be heard.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audīrī, to be heard.	
PERF. audītūs essē, to have been heard.	PERF. audītūs, heard.
FUT. audītūm irī, to be about to be heard.	FUT. audiendūs, to be heard.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.


FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Custōdiō, irē, ivī, itūm,	to guard.
Dormiō, irē, ivī, itūm,	to sleep.
Erūdiō, irē, ivī, itūm,	to instruct, refine, educate.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Audis, audiēbas, audies. 2. Auditis, audiebātis, audietis. 3. Audio, audimus. 4. Audiēbam, audiebāmus. 5. Audiam, audiēmus. 6. Audivimus, audiverāmus, audiverimus. 7. Audivi, audiveram, audivero. 8. Audivit, audiverunt. 9. Audiam, audirem, audiverim, audivissem. 10. Audiāmus, audirēmus, audiverimus, audivissēmus. 11. Audito, auditote.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I hear, I guard. 2. We hear, we guard. 3. He was hearing, they were sleeping. 4. He was sleeping, they were hearing. 5. He will hear, they will hear. 6. We have slept, you have heard. 7. I had heard, I had guarded. 8. He may hear, they may sleep. 9. They may hear, he may sleep. 10. He might hear, they might sleep. 11. He might sleep, they might hear.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitat, admōnet, ducit, custōdit. 2. Invitant, admōnent, ducunt, custodiunt. 3. Invitābant, admonēbant, du-

cēbant, custodiēbant. 4. Invitābat, admonēbat, ducēbat, custodiēbat. 5. Invitavēram, admonuēram, duxēram, audivēram. 6. Invitaverāmus, admonuerāmus, duxerāmus, audiverāmus. 7. Invitavērim, admonuērim, duxērim, custodivērim. 8. Invitavērunt, admonuērunt, duxērunt, audivērunt.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We invite, we admonish, we lead, we instruct. 2. I was inviting, I was admonishing, I was leading, I was instructing. 3. We were praising, we were obeying, we were speaking, we were instructing. 4. He will blame, he will advise, he will speak, he will instruct. 5. I have invited, you have obeyed, he has led, they have guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XLIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Arctē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>closely, soundly.</i>
Mūniō, irē, ivī, itūm,	<i>to fortify.</i>
Sermō, sermōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>discourse, conversation.</i>
Thrāsýbúlus, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Thrasybulus, Athenian general.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cives urbem custodiēbant. 2. Urbem custodiēmus. 3. Milītes templum custodiunt. 4. Verum audītis. 5. Verum audīte. 6. Verum audiverāmus. 7. Verba tua audīmus. 8. Verba mea audivīsti. 9. Oratiōnem tuam audivi. 10. Sermōnem audiēbam. 11. Puēri arcte dormiunt. 12. Puēri cantum luscinae audiēbant. 13. Thrasybūlus urbem munīvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you not hear us? 2. We hear you. 3. Who heard the oration? 4. We heard the oration. 5. The pupils heard the conversation. 6. They did not hear your oration. 7. The citizens are fortifying the city. 8. Who will guard this beautiful city? 9. The brave soldiers will guard the city. 10. Will you guard the temple? 11. We will guard the temple.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLV.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Audīmur, audiebāmur, audiēmur. 2. Audiatur, audiantur. 3. Audīrer, audirēmur. 4. Audītus sum, audīti sumus. 5. Audīti erāmus, audītus eram. 6. Audītus erit, auditi erunt. 7. Audit, audītur. 8. Audiunt, audiuntur. 9. Audiet, audiētur. 10. Audīrem, audīrer. 11. Audiēbam, audiēbar. 12. Audiēbat, audiebātur. 13. Audīvit, audītus est. 14. Audivērat, audītus erat.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am instructed, we are instructed. 2. He will be instructed, they will be instructed. 3. They have been heard, they have been instructed. 4. They had been heard, he had been instructed. 5. He was instructing, he was instructed. 6. They are instructing, they are instructed. 7. We have heard, you have been heard. 8. You have instructed, we have been instructed. 9. I have heard, you have been heard.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLVI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitāris, admonēris, educēris, custodīris. 2. Invitantur, admonentur, educuntur, custodiuntur. 3. Invitātur, admonētur, educitur, custoditur. 4. Invitabītur, admonebītur, educētur, custodiētur. 5. Invitabātur, admonebātur, educebātur, custodiebātur. 6. Invitātus sum, admonītus sum, eductus sum, custodītus sum. 7. Invitāti erant, admonīti erant, educti erant, custodīti erant. 8. Invitāti essēmus, educti essēmus. 9. Admonītus esses, custodītus esses.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is called, he is terrified, he is led forth, he is guarded. 2. They are called, they are terrified, they are led forth, they are guarded. 3. They will be loved, they will be advised, they will be led, they will be heard. 4. I have been blamed, I have been admonished, you had been ruled, you had been guarded. 5. You had been blamed, I had been admonished. 6. You have been ruled, I have been guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XLVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Bellūm, ī, n.

war.

Bēnignē, adv.

kindly.

Civilis, ē.

civil.

Egrēgiċ, <i>adv.</i>	<i>excellently.</i>
Filiūs, <i>ii, m.</i>	<i>son.</i>
Finio, <i>irċ, iċi, itum,</i>	<i>to finish, bring to a close.</i>
Lēgatiō, <i>lēgatiōnis, f.</i>	<i>embassy.</i>
Vox, <i>vōcis, f.</i>	<i>voice.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Vox audita¹ est. 2. Voces audiuntur. 3. Cantus lusciniae auditur. 4. Cantus lusciniarum audiētur. 5. Urbs munita erat. 6. Urbes munientur. 7. Templum custodiētur. 8. Tempa custodiuntur. 9. Legatio benigne audita est. 10. Haec legatio benigne audiētur. 11. Verba tua benigne audientur. 12. Filii regis egregie erudiuntur. 13. Bellum civile finitum¹ est.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Was not the orator heard? 2. The renowned orator was kindly heard. 3. Let the city be fortified.² 4. Let the temples be guarded. 5. The city has been fortified. 6. The temples will be guarded. 7. Let the war be brought to a close. 8. Let the boys be instructed. 9. Let the words of the instructor be heard.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Athēniensis, <i>is, m. and f.</i>	<i>an Athenian.</i>
Cānis, <i>cānis, m. and f.</i>	<i>dog.</i>
Cōlō, <i>cōlēre, cōlui, cultum,</i>	<i>to practise, cultivate.</i>
Cūm, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>with.</i>

¹ Why *audita* and *finitum*, instead of *auditus* and *finitus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

² Let *be fortified* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

Firmō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to strengthen.</i>
Gre ^x , grēgīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>herd, flock.</i>
Illu ^{str} ō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to illumine.</i>
Jungō, jungērē, junxī, junctūm,	<i>to join.</i>
Lābōr, lābōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>labor.</i>
Mōdestiā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>modesty.</i>
Ovis, ōvis, <i>f.</i>	<i>sheep.</i>
Portūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>port, harbor.</i>
Prūdentia, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>prudence.</i>
Terrā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>earth.</i>
Vālētūdō, vālētūdīnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>health.</i>
Vāriētās, vāriētātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>variety.</i>
Viōlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>violate.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sol terram illustrat. 2. Modestia puēros ornat. 3. Discipūli memoriam exercent. 4. Discipūli tui memoriam exercēbant. 5. Canes gregem custodiēbant. 6. Greges ovium custodiuntur. 7. Praeceptōres juventūtem erudient. 8. Labor valetudīnem tuam firmābit. 9. Variētās nos delectat. 10. Athenienses portum munivērunt. 11. Philosophia nos erudīvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Good men love virtue. 2. Virtue will always¹ be loved. 3. Let virtue be always practised. 4. We will always practise virtue. 5. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state. 6. They will be punished. 7. Will you instruct these boys? 8. We will instruct good boys. 9. Who² led this army into Italy? 10. Hannibal led the army into Italy.

¹ For the syntax of adverbs, and for their place in the Latin sentence, see Rule LI. and note 4, p. 72.

² Which form of the Interrogative should be used, *quīs* or *quī*? See 188.

VERBS IN IO OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

213. *Verbs in io* are generally of the fourth conjugation; and even the few which are of the third are inflected with the endings of the fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels, as follows:

ACTIVE VOICE.

214. *Capio, I take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
cāpiō,	cāpĕrĕ,	cēpī,	captūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
cāpiō, cāpīs, cāpīt;	cāpīmūs, cāpītīs, cāpiunt.
IMPERFECT.	
cāpiēbām, -iēbās, -iēbāt;	cāpiēbāmūs, -iēbātīs, -iēbant.
FUTURE.	
cāpiām, -iēs, -iēt;	cāpiēmūs, -iētīs, -ient.
PERFECT.	
cēpī, -istī, -īt;	cēpīmūs, -istīs, -ērunt, or ērē.
PLUPERFECT.	
cēpĕrām, -ērās, -ērāt;	cēpĕrāmūs, -ērātīs, -ērant.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
cēpĕrō, -erīs, -erīt;	cēpĕrīmūs, -erītīs, -erint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

cāpiām, -iās, -iāt;	cāpiāmūs, -iātīs, -iant.
IMPERFECT.	
cāpĕrēm, -ērēs, -ērēt;	cāpĕrēmūs, -ērētīs, -ērent.
PERFECT.	
cēpĕrīm, -erīs, -erīt;	cēpĕrīmūs, -erītīs, -erint.
PLUPERFECT.	
cēpissēm, -issēs, -issēt;	cēpissēmūs, -issētīs, -issent.

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
PRES. cǎpě ;		cǎpĭtě.
FUT. cǎpĭtǔ,		cǎpĭtǔte,
cǎpĭtǔ ;		cǎpiuntǔ.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. cǎpěřě.		PRES. cǎpiens.
PERF. cǎpișșě.		
FUT. captūrŭs eșșě.		FUT. captūrŭs.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. cǎpiendĭ.		
Dat. cǎpiendǔ.		
Acc. cǎpiendŭm.		Acc. captŭm.
Abl. cǎpiendǔ.		Abl. captŭ.

PASSIVE VOICE.

215. Capior, *I am taken.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
cǎpiōr,	cǎpĭ,	captŭs sŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
cǎpiōr, cǎpěris, cǎpĭtŭr ;		cǎpĭmŭr, cǎpĭmĭnĭ, cǎpiuntŭr.
IMPERFECT.		
cǎpiēbār, -iēbāris, -iēbātŭr ;		cǎpiēbāmŭr, -iēbāmĭnĭ, -iēbantŭr.
FUTURE.		
cǎpiār, -iērĭs, -iētŭr ;		cǎpiēmŭr, -iēmĭnĭ, -ientur.
PERFECT.		
captŭs sŭm, ēs, est ;		captĭ sŭmŭs, estĭs, sunt.
PLUPERFECT. .		
captŭs ērām, ērās, ērāt ;		captĭ ērāmŭs, ērātĭs, ērant.
FUTURE PERFECT.		
captŭs ērǔ, ērĭs, ērĭt ;		captĭ ērĭmŭs, ērĭtĭs, ērunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
căpiăr, -iărīs, -iătūr ;	căpiāmūr, -iāmīnī, -iantūr.
IMPERFECT.	
căpērēr, -ērērīs, -ērētūr ;	căpērēmūr, -ērēmīnī, -erentūr.
PERFECT.	
captūs sīm, sīs, sīt ;	captī sīmūs, sītīs, sint.
PLUPERFECT.	
captūs essēm, essēs, essēt ;	captī essēmūs, essētīs, essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. căpērē ;	căpīmīnī.
FUT. căpītōr, căpītōr ;	căpiuntōr.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. căpī.		
PERF. captūs essē.		PERF. captūs.
FUT. captūm irī.		FUT. căpiendūs. ¹

EXERCISE XLIX.

I. Vocabulary.

A, āb, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>from, by.</i>
Accipiō, accipērē, accēpī, acceptūm,	<i>to receive.</i>
Bellūm, ī, <i>n.</i>	<i>war.</i>
Căpiō, căpērē, cēpī, captūm,	<i>to take, capture.</i>
Carthāgō, Carthāgīnīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>Carthage, city in Africa.</i>
Cornēliūs, īi, <i>m.</i>	<i>Cornelius, a proper name.</i>
Gallūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Gaul, a Gaul.²</i>

¹ The pupil will observe that the conjugation of *Capio* is somewhat peculiar, combining certain characteristics of the *Fourth Conjugation* with others of the *Third*. He should now carefully compare it with the conjugation of *Rego* and with that of *Audio*, and note with accuracy both the differences and the resemblances.

² The Gauls were a people inhabiting the country of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.

Jăciō, jăcērē, jēcī, jactŭm,	<i>to cast, throw, hurl.</i>
Lăpis, lăpidis, <i>m.</i>	<i>stone.</i>
Lux, lŭcis, <i>f.</i>	<i>light.</i>
Mŭrus, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>wall.</i>
Publiŭs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Publius, a proper name.</i>
Rēgŭlus, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Regulus, Roman general.</i>
Tělŭm, ī, <i>n.</i>	<i>javelin.</i>
Trōjă, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Troy, city in Asia Minor.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Graeci Trojam capiēbant. 2. Trojam cepērunt. 3. Troja capta¹ est. 4. Troja capta erat. 5. Regŭlus ipse captus est. 6. Belli duces capientur. 7. Haec urbs capiētur. 8. Illam urbem capiēmus. 9. Roma a Gallis² capta erat. 10. Galli Romam cepērant. 11. Scipio multas civitātes cepit. 12. Luna lucem a sole accīpit. 13. Lucem a sole accipīmus. 14. Tuam³ epistōlam accēpi. 15. Milītes tela jaciēbant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We were taking the city. 2. The city will be taken. 3. The city has been taken. 4. The cities will be taken. 5. The cities have been taken. 6. Who⁴ took Carthage? 7. Publius Cornelius Scipio took Carthage. 8. Have you not⁵ received my letter? 9. I have received your letter. 10. Have you not received five letters? 11. We have received ten letters.

¹ For the agreement of the participle in the compound tenses with the subject, see Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

² See Rule XXXII., page 24.

³ What is the usual place of the Possessive Pronoun? See page 77, note 1. In this sentence, *tuam* precedes its noun because it is emphatic.

⁴ Which form of the Interrogative Pronoun should be used, *quīs* or *quī*? See 188.

⁵ Which Interrogative Particle should be used? See 346, II. 1, page 59.

PART THIRD.

S Y N T A X.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

SECTION I.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their STRUCTURE, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound*:

I. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses but a single thought :
Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic.

II. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses two (or more) thoughts, so related that one is dependent upon the other :

Dōnec ęris fęlix, multos nŭmęrābis āmicos; *So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends.* Ovid.

1. CLAUSES. — In this example, two simple sentences, (1) “*You will be prosperous,*” and (2) “*You will number many friends,*” are so united that the first only specifies the *time* of the second : *You will number many friends, (when?) so long as you are prosperous.* The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members*.

III. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts :

Sol ruit, et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends, and the mountains are shaded.* Virg.

346. In their USE, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory*.

I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion :

Miltiades accūsātus est, Miltiades was accused. Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

Quis non paupertātem extimescit, Who does not fear poverty ? Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word, — either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne, nonne, num* :

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information : *Scrībitne*, Is he writing ? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes* : *Nonne scrībit*, Is he not writing ?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no* : *Num scrībit*, Is he writing ?

III. An IMPERATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty :

Justitiam cōle, Cultivate justice. Cic.

IV. An EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE has the form of an exclamation :

Rēliquit quos viros, What heroes he has left ! Cic.

SECTION II.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied :

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.

2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject :

Cluilius mōrītur, Cluilius dies. Liv.

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *mōrītur* the predicate.

348. The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers :

In his castris Cluilius, Albānus rex, mōritur; *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius, Albānus rex*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and *in his castris mōritur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

349. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE. — The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

350. SIMPLE AND COMPLEX. — The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex:

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.¹

SIMPLE SUBJECT.

351. The subject of a sentence must be a noun, or some word or words used as a noun:

*Rex*² dēcrēvit, *The king decreed.* Nep. *Ego*² ad te scribo, *I write to you.* Cic.

SIMPLE PREDICATE.

353. The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

Miltiādes est accūsātus,³ *Miltiades was accused.* Nep. Tu es testis, *You are a witness.* Cic. Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind.* Cic.

1. Like *Sum*, several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective*.⁴

¹ Thus, in the example given above, the simple subject is *Cluilius*; the complex, *Cluilius, Albānus rex*; the simple predicate, *mōritur*; the complex, *in his castris mōritur*.

² In these examples, the noun *rex* and the pronoun *ego*, used as a noun, are the subjects.

³ In the first of these examples, the predicate is the verb, *est accūsātus*; in the second, the noun and copula, *est testis*; and in the third, the adjective and copula, *caeca est*.

⁴ Thus *testis*, in the second example, is a *Predicate Noun*, and *caeca*, in the third, is a *Predicate Adjective*.

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.¹

362. A Predicate Noun² denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE:

Ego sum nuntius,² *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

EXERCISE L.

I. Vocabulary.

Amnis, amnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>river.</i>
Creō, arē, āvi, atum,	<i>to create, make, elect.</i>
Graeciā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Greece.</i>
Impērātōr, impērātōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>commander.</i>
Lātinūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Latinus, Italian king.</i>
Lāvinia, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Lavinia, a proper name.</i>
Mālū, ī, <i>n.</i>	<i>evil.</i>
Nōmīnō, arē, āvi, atum,	<i>to call, name.</i>
Nūmā, ae, <i>m.</i>	<i>Numa, Roman king.</i>
Rhēnūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>the Rhine, river in Europe.</i>
Serviūs, iī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Servius, Roman king.</i>
Stultitiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>folly.</i>
Tūm, <i>adv.</i>	<i>then, at that time.</i>

¹ In illustrating in the subsequent pages the leading principles of the Latin Syntax, we shall take up the most common Rules in the order in which they stand in the Grammar. In doing so, we shall repeat in their proper places those Rules which we have had occasion to anticipate in the previous Exercises.

² See 353, 1; also Rule I. note, p. 59.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicĕro *consul*¹ fuit.² 2. Cicĕro *orātor* fuit. 3. Cicĕro tum³ erat² *orātor* clarissĭmus.⁴ 4. Puer *orātor* erit. 5. Numa erat rex. 6. Numa rex¹ creātus est. 7. Cato imperātor fuit. 8. Cato magnus imperātor fuit. 9. Scipio consul creātus est. 10. Scipio consul fuĕrat. 11. Stultitia est malum. 12. Gloria est fructus virtūtis. 13. Graecia artium⁵ mater nominātur.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Rhine is a large *river*. 2. Rome was a beautiful *city*. 3. Cato was a wise *man*. 4. Your father is a wise man. 5. Lavinia was the daughter of the king. 6. Latinus was king. 7. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus. 8. Tullia was the daughter of Servius.

APPOSITIVES.

RULE II.—Appositives.

363. An Appositive⁶ agrees with its Subject in CASE:

Cluilius rex⁶ mōritur, *Cluilius the king dies*. Liv. Urbes Carthāgo⁶ atque Nūmantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia*. Cic.

¹ Predicate Noun. See Rule I. For Model for parsing Predicate Nouns, see p. 59.

² For the *place* of the verb with Predicate Nouns, see note on *fuit* under Exercise XIX.

³ Adverb qualifying *erat*. See Rule LI. p. 72.

⁴ See 162; also Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

⁵ *Artium* depends upon *mater*. See Rule XVI. p. 22.

⁶ See 363, note, p. 15; also Model, p. 16. *Rex*, *Carthāgo*, and *Numantia* are all Predicate Nouns.

EXERCISE LI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Alexandĕr, Alexandrĭ, <i>m.</i>	<i>Alexander, the Great.</i>
Conjux, conjūgis, <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>wife, husband.</i>
Epīrūs, ī, <i>f.</i>	<i>Epirus, country in Greece.</i>
Erūditūs, ā, ūm,	<i>learned, instructed in.</i>
Hannŏ, Hannŏnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>Hanno, Carthaginian general.</i>
Justūs, ā, ūm,	<i>just, upright.</i>
Măcĕdŏniă, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Macedonia, Macedon.</i>
Nĕpŏs, nĕpŏtis, <i>m.</i>	<i>grandson.</i>
Paulūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Paulus, Roman consul.</i>
Philippūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Philip, king of Macedon.</i>
Pyrrhūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Phyrrhus, king of Epirus.</i>
Vulnĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm,	<i>to wound.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicĕro, eruditissĭmus *homo*,¹ consul² fuit. 2. Numa, justissĭmus *vir*, erat rex. 3. Ancus, Numae *nepos*,¹ rex fuit. 4. Hanno *dux* captus est.³ 5. Pyrrhus, Epīri rex, vulnerā-tus est. 6. Philippus, rex Macedoniae, Athenienses superā-vit. 7. Paulus consul¹ regem superāvit. 8. Philosophia, mater bonārum artium, nos erūdit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Tullia, *the daughter*¹ of Servius, was the wife² of Tarquin. 2. Servius, *the father* of Tullia, was a king. 3. Scipio, *the leader* of the Romans, took Carthage. 4. Scipio the general was praised. 5. Philip, king of Macedonia, was the father of Alexander. 6. Alexander, the son of Philip, was king of Macedonia.

¹ Appositive. See Rule II. For Model for parsing Appositives, see p. 16.

² Predicate Noun. See Rule I.

³ See 214.



SECTION II.

NOMINATIVE.

364. CASES. — Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows :

I. Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II. Vocative,	Case of Address.
III. Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV. Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V. Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI. Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations. ¹

RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative :

Servius regnāvit, Servius reigned. Liv. Pātent portae, The gates are open. Cic. Rex vicit, The king conquered. Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively :

Ego rēges ejēci, I have banished kings. Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. — See 460, 2, p. 54.

EXERCISE LII.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Libertās, libertātis, f.</i>	<i>liberty.</i>
<i>Opulentūs, ō, ūm,</i>	<i>rich, opulent.</i>
<i>Quōtidīē, adv.</i>	<i>daily.</i>
<i>Vitiūm, ī, n.</i>	<i>fault, vice.</i>
<i>Oppidum, ī, n.</i>	<i>town, city.</i>

¹ This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because it is thought it will best present the force of the several cases, and their relation to each other.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Italia*¹ liberāta² est. 2. *Urbs* Roma liberāta erat. 3. Haec *urbs* clarissīma liberabitur. 4. Haec *urbs* opulentissīma est capta. 5. Virtus quotidie laudātur. 6. Virtūtes semper laudabuntur. 7. Sapientia semper est laudāta. 8. Libertas semper laudabitur. 9. Omnia hostium oppida expugnāta sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not *Philip* wounded? 2. *Philip*, king of Macedonia, was wounded. 3. Many *soldiers* were wounded. 4. Did not the soldiers fight bravely? 5. The soldiers fought bravely. 6. Will not the laws be observed? 7. The laws have been observed. 8. They will be observed.

SECTION III.

VOCATIVE.

RULE IV.—Case of Address.

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative :

Perge, Laeli,³ Proceed, Laelius. Cic. Quid est, Cātīlina,³ Why is it, Catiline? Cic. Tuum est, Servi,³ regnum. The kingdom is yours, Servius. Liv.

EXERCISE LIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Auditōr, auditōris, m.	hearer, auditor.
Cārūs, ā, ūm,	dear.
Jūvēnis, is, m. and f.	a youth, young man.
Lēgātūs, ī, m.	ambassador.
Sālūtō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to salute.

¹ Subject of *liberāta est*. See Rule III. For Model for parsing Subjects, see p. 57.

² Why *liberāta* rather than *liberātus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

³ *Laeli*, *Catīlina*, and *Servi* are all in the Vocative by this Rule. *Laeli* is for *Laelie*; and *Servi*, for *Servie*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Te, *Scipio*,¹ salutāmus. 2. Vos, *amīci*¹ carissīmi,² salūto. 3. Vos, *audītōres* omnes, salutāmus. 4. Verba mea, *judices*, audīte. 5. Haec verba, legāti, audīte. 6. Vos, milītes, hanc urbem clarissimam custodīte. 7. Milītes¹ fortissīmi, patriam vestram liberāte. 8. Vestram virtutem, juvēnes, laudāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. *Boys*,¹ hear the words of your father. 2. *Judges*, you shall hear the truth. 3. *Father*, have we not spoken the truth? 4. You, boys, have spoken the truth. 5. Soldiers, you have fought bravely. 6. You, brave soldiers, have saved your country. 7. Pupils, I praise your diligence.

SECTION IV.

ACCUSATIVE.

RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object³ of an action is put in the Accusative :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world*.⁴ Cic. Libēram publicam, *Free the republic*. Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni sālūtem dēfendite, *Defend the safety of the Roman people*. Cic.

¹ In the Vocative, according to Rule IV. No special Model for parsing is deemed necessary, as all nouns are parsed substantially in the same way; though different Rules are, of course, assigned for different cases. See Directions for Parsing, p. 15; also Model, p. 16.

The Vocative is not often the first word in the sentence, though it is sometimes thus placed, as in the seventh sentence in this Exercise.

² See 162.

³ See note on Direct Object, p. 70.

⁴ See note on the position of the Object in the Latin sentence, p. 70.

EXERCISE LIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Flāminiūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Flaminius</i> , Roman general.
Marcellūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Marcellus</i> , Roman general.
Poenūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Carthaginian</i> .
Poenus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>a Carthaginian</i> .
Sanctūs, ū, ūm,	<i>holy, sacred</i> .
Sicīliā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Sicily</i> , the island of.
Spōliō, āre, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to rob, spoil, despoil</i> .
Syrācūsae, ārūm, <i>f. plur.</i>	<i>Syracuse</i> , city in Sicily.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Alexander multas *urbes*¹ expugnāvit. 2. Italia pulchras *urbes* habuit. 3. Hostes *templa* spoliābant. 4. *Templa* sanctissima spoliavērunt. 5. Hannībal Flaminium¹ consulem² superāvit. 6. Poeni Siciliam occupavērunt. 7. Marcellus³ magnam hujus insulae⁴ partem cepit. 8. Marcellus Syracūsas,¹ nobilissimam urbem,² expugnāvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you not⁵ love your *parents*?¹ 2. We love our *parents*. 3. You practise *virtue*. 4. Our pupils will practise *virtue*. 5. Did not Rome have beautiful temples? 6. Rome had beautiful temples. 7. Have not the enemy⁶ taken the city? 8. They have taken the beautiful city. 9. They will plunder all the temples.

¹ Direct Object, in the Accusative, according to Rule V. For Model for parsing, see p. 71.

² Appositive. See Rule II. 363.

³ Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

⁴ *Hujus insulae*, of this island; i.e., of Sicily. Observe the position of the Genitive between the adjective *magnam* and its noun *partem*. See note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX. II. 10.

⁵ See 346, II. 1.

⁶ The Latin word must be in the plural.

ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

RULE VIII.—Accusative of Time and Space.

378. DURATION OF TIME, and EXTENT OF SPACE, are expressed by the Accusative :

Rōmulus septem et trīginta regnāvit annos,¹ *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambūlare, *To walk five miles.* Cic. Pēdes octōginta distāre, *To be eighty feet distant.* Cacs. Nix quattuor pēdes¹ alta, *Snow four feet deep.* Liv.

EXERCISE LV.

I. Vocabulary.

Aggēr, aggēris, <i>m.</i>	<i>mound, rampart.</i>
Ambūlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to walk.</i>
Centūm,	<i>hundred.</i>
Glādiūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>sword.</i>
Lācēdaemōniūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>a Lacedaemonian, Spartan.</i>
Lātūs, ā, ūm,	<i>broad, wide.</i>
Longūs, ā, ūm,	<i>long.</i>
Mensīs, mensīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>month.</i>
Nox, noctīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>night.</i>
Octōgintā,	<i>eighty.</i>
Pēs, pēdis, <i>m.</i>	<i>foot.</i>
Quinquāgintā,	<i>fifty.</i>
Regnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to reign.</i>
Vigilō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to watch, be awake.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Lacedaemonii pacem sex annos² servavērunt. 2. Magnam noctis partem² vigilavēram. 3. Puer octo horas

¹ Annos denotes *Duration of Time*, while millia and pedes denote *Extent of Space*. They are all in the Accusative by this Rule.

² In the Accusative denoting *Duration of Time*. See Rule VIII. No special Model for parsing is necessary. The pupil will be guided by previous directions and Models.

dormīvit. 4. Latīnus multos *annos* regnāvit. 5. In Italiā sex menses fuīmus. 6. In illā urbe decem dies fuīmus. 7. Agger octoginta pedes¹ latus fuit. 8. Hić gladius sex pedes longus est.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Did you not walk two *hours*? 2. We walked three *hours*. 3. Did you not sleep six *hours*? 4. We slept eight hours. 5. The soldiers guarded the city ten months. 6. Were you not in the city four months? 7. We were in the city five months. 8. The mound was fifty feet high.

ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT.

RULE IX.—Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative :

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv. Plāto Tārentum² vēnit, *Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Fūgit Tarquīnios,² *He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic.

EXERCISE LVI.

I. Vocabulary.

Athēnae, ārūm, *f. plur.*
Fūgiō, fūgērē, fūgi, fūgītūm,
Lysandēr, Lysandri, *m.*
Miltiādēs, īs, *m.*
Nāvīgō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,

Athens, capital of Attica.
to flee, fly, run away.
Lysander, Spartan general.
Miltiades, Athenian general.
to sail, sail to.

¹ In the Accusative, denoting *Extent of Space*.

² *Romam, Tarentum, and Tarquinios* are all names of towns used as the *Limit of Motion*; i.e., the motion is represented as ending in those towns. They are in the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

Rēducō, rēducēre, rēdūxī, rēductūm,	<i>to lead back.</i>
Rēvocō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to recall.</i>
Spartā, ae, f.	<i>Sparta, capital of Laconia.</i>
Tārentūm, ī, n.	<i>Tarentum, Italian town.</i>
Thēbānūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Theban.</i>
Thēbānūs, ī, m.	<i>a Theban.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicēro *Romam*¹ revocātus est. 2. Consūles *Romam* revocāti sunt. 3. Hannībal *Carthagīnem*¹ revocātus erat. 4. Lysander *Athēnas*¹ navigāvit. 5. Pyrrhus Tarentum fugātus est. 6. Consul regem Tarentum fugāvit. 7. Thēbāni exercitum Spartam ducunt. 8. Miltiādes exercitum Athēnas reduxit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who fled *to Carthage*?² 2. Did not the enemy flee *to Carthage*? 3. They fled *to Carthage*. 4. Will not the army be led back *to Rome*?² 5. The army has been led back *to Rome*. 6. The commander led the army *to Athens*.

SECTION V.

DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used,

I. With Verbs.

II. With Adjectives.

III. With their Derivatives, — Adverbs and Substantives.

DATIVE WITH VERBS.

383. INDIRECT OBJECT. — A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the

¹ In the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

² The Latin word will be in the Accusative, in accordance with Rule IX.

action, — that TO or FOR which something is or is done. A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative :

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs :

Tempōri¹ cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic. Sibi timuērant, *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. Lābōri stūdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Nōbis¹ vīta dāta est, *Life has been granted to us.* Cic. Nūmītōri dēditur, *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Pons īter hostibus² dēdit, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. Lēges cīvītātibus suis scripsērunt, *They prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

EXERCISE LVII.

I. Vocabulary.

Carthāgīniensīs, ě,	Carthaginian.
Carthāgīniensīs, īs, m. and f.	a Carthaginian.
Cōnōn, Cōnōnīs, m.	Conon, Athenian gen'l.
Dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbui, dēbitūm,	to owe.
Displīceō, displīcere, displīcui, displīcitūm,	to displease.
Dōnō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to give.
Gens, gentīs, f.	race.
Grātīā, ae, f.	favor, gratitude, thanks.
Lābōrō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to strive for.

¹ Tempōri, sibi, and labōri are in the Dative with the Intransitive verbs *cedit*, *timuērant* (intransitive here), and *student*; while *nobis* and *Numitōri* are in the Dative with the Passive verbs *data est* and *deditur*.

² Hostibus is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *iter*, with the Transitive verb *dedit*. In the same way, *civitatibus* is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *leges*, with the Transitive verb *scripsērunt*.

Monstrō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to show, point out.</i>
Plāceō, plācēre, plācuī, plācītūm,	<i>to please.</i>
Sēnectūs, sēnectūtis, <i>f.</i>	<i>old age.</i>
Sententiā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>opinion.</i>
Serviō, servīre, servīvī, servitūm,	<i>to serve.</i>
Viā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>way, road.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Cives *legibus*¹ parent. 2. Multae Italiae civitatēs *Romānis* parēbant. 3. Haec sententia *Caesāri*¹ placuit. 4. Illa sententia *Caesāri* displicuit. 5. Milites gloriae labōrant. 6. Hoc consilium *Caesāri* nuntiātum est. 7. Nostra consilia hostibus nuntiāta sunt. 8. *Tibi*² magnam *gratiam* habēmus. 9. Habeo *senectūti* magnam *gratiam*. 10. Conon pecuniam civibus donāvit. 11. Pastor puēro viam monstrāvit. 12. Tibi viam monstrābo. 13. Romāni Carthaginiensibus bellum indixērunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Did I not obey my³ *father*?¹ 2. You obeyed your *father*. 3. We will obey *the laws* of the state. 4. Do not the citizens serve *the king*? 5. They have served the king. 6. Will you not serve the state? 7. We will serve the state. 8. Will you not tell *me* (to me⁴) *the truth*?⁵ 9. I have told *you* (to you) *the truth*. 10. Will you show

¹ Indirect Object, in the Dative, according to Rule XII. I.

² Indirect Object, in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *gratiam* with the Transitive verb *habēmus*, according to Rule XII. II.

In the arrangement of Objects, the *Indirect* generally precedes the *Direct*, as in this sentence; though the order is sometimes reversed, as in the tenth sentence in this Exercise.

³ In examples like this, the Possessive pronoun may either be expressed or omitted, as it is often omitted in Latin when not emphatic.

⁴ Dative. See Rule XII. II.

⁵ Accusative. See Rule XII. II.

me (to me) the way? 11. We will show you the way.
 12. Did they declare war against the Romans? 13.
 They had declared war against the Romans.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XIV.—Dative.

391. With Adjectives, the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative :

Patriae solum omnibus¹ carum est, The soil of their country is dear to all. Cic. *Id aptum est tempori, This is adapted to the time.*
 Cic. *Omni aetati mors est communis, Death is common to every age.*
 Cic. *Canis similis lupo est, A dog is similar to a wolf.* Cic. *Naturae accommodatum, Adapted to nature.* Cic. *Graeciae utile, Useful to Greece.* Nep.

1. ADJECTIVES WITH DATIVE. — The most common are those signifying :

Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in bilis.

EXERCISE LVIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Amicus, a, um,	friendly.
Hispania, ae, f.	Spain.
Multitudo, multitudinis, f.	multitude.
Saguntum, i, n.	Saguntum, city in Spain.
Similis, e,	like.
Solum, i, n.	soil.
Veritas, veritatis, f.	verity, truth.

¹ Dative, showing to whom the soil is dear, — dear TO ALL. In the same way in these examples, *tempori* is used with *aptum*, *aetati* with *communis*, *lupo* with *similis*, *naturae* with *accommodatum*, and *Graeciae* with *utile*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Parentes *nobis*¹ cari sunt. 2. Patria *nobis* cara est.
 3. Patria *tibi*¹ erit carissima. 4. Patriae solum *nobis* carum
 est. 5. Hannibal exercitui carus fuit. 6. Victoria Romā-
 nis grata fuit. 7. Libertas multitudīni grata est. 8. Veri-
 tas nobis gratissima est. 9. Jucunda mihi oratio fuit. 10.
 Saguntum Romānis amicum fuit. 11. Hannibal Sagun-
 tum,² Hispaniae civitatem³ Romānis⁴ amicam,⁵ expugnāvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not these books be useful *to you*? 2. They are
 useful *to us*. 3. They will be useful *to you*. 4. This law
 has been useful to the state. 5. Will not this book be ac-
 ceptable to you? 6. That book will be acceptable to me.
 7. This book will be most acceptable⁶ to my brother.

SECTION VI.

GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes
source or *cause*; but, in its general use, it corresponds to
 the English Objective with *of*, and expresses various ad-
 jective relations.

GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the
 meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

¹ Dative, according to Rule XIV.

² Accusative. See Rule V.

³ Appositive, in agreement with Saguntum. See Rule II.

⁴ Dative with *amicam*. See Rule XIV.

⁵ *Amicam* agrees with *civitatem*. See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

⁶ See 162.

Cātōnis¹ ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations*. Cic. Castra hostium, *The camp of the enemy*. Liv. Mors Hāmīlcāris, *The death of Hamilcar*. Liv. See 363.

EXERCISE LIX.

I. Vocabulary.

Commūnis, ě,	common.
Conscientiā, ae, f.	consciousness.
Dulcis, ě,	sweet, pleasant.
Hōnōr, hōnōris, m.	honor.
Orbis, orbis, m.	circle, world.
Orbis terrārūm, ²	the world.
Parvūs, ū, ūm,	small.
Princīpiūm, ii, n.	beginning.
Rectūm, i, n.	rectitude, right.
Sōcrātēs, is, m.	Socrates, Athenian philosopher.

II. Translate into English.

1. *Justitia virtūtum*³ regīna est. 2. *Sapientia est mater omnium bonārum artium*. 3. *Socrātes parens philosophiae* fuit. 4. *Virtus veri hōnōris*⁴ mater est. 5. *Patria communis*⁵ est omnium nostrum⁶ parens. 6. *Roma orbis*⁷ terrārūm caput fuit. 7. *Omnium rerum principia parva* sunt. 8. *Conscientia recti* est praeium virtūtis dulcissimum.

¹ *Cātōnis* qualifies *oratiōnes*, and is in the Genitive, in accordance with the Rule.

² Literally *the circle of lands*.

³ Genitive, depending upon *regīna*. Rule XVI.

⁴ Genitive, depending upon *mater*.

⁵ *Commūnis* agrees with *parens*. See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

⁶ Genitive, depending upon *parens*.

⁷ *Orbis* depends upon *caput*, and *terrārūm* upon *orbis*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The orations of Cicero are praised.
2. The courage of the soldiers saved the city.
3. The crown of the king was golden.
4. The sword of the general was beautiful.
5. The son of the consul violated the laws of the state.
6. The citizens will observe the laws of the state.

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XVII. — Genitive.

399. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning :

Avidus laudis,¹ *Desirous of praise*. Cic. *Oti cupidus*, *Desirous of leisure*. Liv. *Amans sui virtus*, *Virtue fond of itself*. Cic. *Efficiens voluptatis*, *Productive of pleasure*. Cic. *Glōriæ mēmor*, *Mindful of glory*. Liv.

1. FORCE OF THIS GENITIVE. — The genitive here retains its usual force, — *of*, *in respect of*, — and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE. — The most common are

1) Verbals in **ax**, and participles in **ans** and **ens** used adjectively.

2) Adjectives denoting *desire*, *knowledge*, *skill*, *recollection*, *participation*, *mastery*, *fulness*, and their contraries.

EXERCISE LX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Amans, *āmantis*,

loving, *fond of*.

Avidus, *ā*, *ūm*,

desirous of, *eager for*.

¹ *Laudis* completes the meaning of *avidus*; *desirous* (of what?) of *praise*. It is in the Genitive, by this Rule. In the same way, *otii* completes the meaning of *cupidus*; *sui*, of *amans*; *voluptatis*, of *efficiens*; and *glōriæ*, of *memor*.

Certāmen, certāminis, <i>n.</i>	contest, strife, battle.
Cūpidūs, ā, ūm,	desirous of.
Fons, fontis, <i>m.</i>	fountain.
Laus, laudis, <i>f.</i>	praise.
Nōvītās, nōvītātis, <i>f.</i>	novelty.
Pēritūs, ā, ūm,	skilled in.
Piscis, piscis, <i>m.</i>	fish.
Plēnūs, ā, ūm,	full.
Vōluptās, vōluptātis, <i>f.</i>	pleasure.

II. Translate into English.

1. Romāni avidi *gloriae*¹ fuērunt. 2. Homīnes *novitātis* avidi sunt. 3. Numa *pacis*¹ erat amantissimus.² 4. *Patriae* amantissimi sumus. 5. Consul *gloriae* cupidus erat. 6. Cicēro *gloriae* cupidissimus² fuit. 7. Milītes erant avidissimi certāminis. 8. Fons piscium plenissimus est. 9. Athenienses belli navālis peritissimi fuērunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Boys are fond of praise. 2. Are you not fond of praise? 3. We are fond of praise. 4. Were not the Athenians fond of pleasure? 5. They were always fond of pleasure. 6. They are desirous of glory. 7. Are you not desirous of a victory? 8. We are desirous of a victory.

SECTION VII.

ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive; but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *from, by, in, with*, and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used with Verbs and Adjectives; while the Genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393.

¹ Genitive, completing the meaning of the adjective. See Rule XVII.

² See 162.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS.

RULE XXI.—Cause, Manner, Means.

414. Cause, Manner, and Means¹ are denoted by the Ablative :

Ars ūtilitāte laudātur, *An art is praised because of its usefulness.* Cic. Glōriā dūcitur, *He is led by glory.* Cic. Duōbus mōdis fit, *It is done in two ways.* Cic. Sol omnia lūce collustrat, *The sun illumines all things with its light.* Cic. Apri dentibus se tūtantur, *Boars defend themselves with their tusks.* Cic. Aeger ērat vulneribus, *He was ill in consequence of his wounds.* Nep. Laetus sorte tua, *Pleased with your lot.* Hor.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This Ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

2. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.—This designates that *by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which*, any thing is or is done.

3. ABLATIVE OF MANNER.—This Ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the preposition *cum* ; but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner*, — *mōre, ordine, rātiōne*, etc., — occur without such accompaniment :

Vi summa, *With the greatest violence.* Nep. Mōre Persārum, *In the manner of the Persians.* Nep. Cum silentio audire, *To hear in silence.* Liv. Id ordine facere, *To do it in order, or properly.* Cic.

¹ It is not always possible to distinguish between *Cause, Manner, and Means*. Sometimes the same Ablative may involve both *Cause* and *Means*, or both *Means* and *Manner*. Still the pupil should be taught to determine in each instance, as far as possible, what is the real force of the Ablative. Thus in the examples, *utilitāte* denotes cause, because of its usefulness ; *gloriā*, means, with perhaps the accessory notion of cause ; *modis*, manner ; *luce*, means ; *dentibus*, means ; *vulneribus*, cause, with perhaps the accessory notion of means ; and *sorte*, cause and means.

4. ABLATIVE OF MEANS. — This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed.

5. ABLATIVE OF AGENT. — This designates the Person by whom any thing is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the preposition *a* or *ab*:

*Occisus est a Thēbānis, He was slain by the Thebans.*¹ *Nep.*

EXERCISE LXI.

I. Vocabulary.

Mūnūs, mūnērīs, <i>n. s.</i>	<i>reward, gift.</i>
Nātūrā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>nature.</i>
Pellis, pellis, <i>f.</i>	<i>skin, hide.</i>
Quōtidiānūs, ā, ūm,	<i>daily.</i>
Scythae, ārum, <i>m. plur.</i>	<i>Scythians.</i>
Triumphō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to triumph.</i>
Usūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>use.</i>
Vestiō, īre, īvi, itūm,	<i>to clothe.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Consul *virtūte*² laudātus est. 2. Urbs *natūrā*³ munita erat. 3. Haec urbs *arte* muniētur. 4. *Muneribus*³ delectāmur. 5. Roma Camilli *virtūte* est servāta. 6. Camillus hostes magno proelio superāvit. 7. Scipio patrem singulāri *virtūte* servāvit. 8. Scipio ingenti gloriā⁴ triumphāvit.⁵ 9. Scythae corpōra pellibus vestiēbant.

¹ By comparing this example with those under the Rule, the second for instance, it will be seen that the Latin construction distinguishes the person by whom any thing is done from the means by which it is done, designating the former by the Ablative with *a* or *ab* (*a Thēbānis*, by the Thebans), and the latter by the Ablative without a preposition; *gloriā*, by glory.

² Ablative of Cause, according to Rule XXI.

³ Ablative of Means.

⁴ Ablative of Manner.

⁵ The privilege of entering Rome in grand triumphal procession was sometimes awarded to eminent Roman generals as they returned from victory. *Triumphāvit* here refers to such a triumph.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are not the fields adorned *with flowers*?¹ 2. The fields are adorned *with beautiful flowers*. 3. Have you not strengthened your memory *by use*? 4. I have strengthened my memory by daily use. 5. You will be praised for (because of) your diligence.² 6. Our pupils have been praised for their diligence. 7. The general saved the city by his valor. 8. Rome was saved by the valor of the Roman soldiers.

ABLATIVES WITH COMPARATIVES.

RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative:

Nihil est *amabilius virtute*,³ *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic.
Quid est *melius bonitate*,³ *What is better than goodness?* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM⁴ are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them:

Hibernia *minor quam Britannia existimatur*, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britannia.* Caes. Agris *quam urbi*⁵ *terribilior*, *More terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

¹ Ablative of Means. Rule XXI.

² Ablative of Cause.

³ *Virtute* and *bonitate* are both in the Ablative, by this Rule; the former after the comparative *amabilis*, and the latter after the comparative *melius*.

⁴ *Quam* is a conjunction, meaning *than*. Conjunctions are mere connectives, used to connect words or clauses.

⁵ *Agris* and *urbi*, the one *before* and the other *after quam*, are both in the same construction, in the Dative, depending upon *terribilior* according to Rule XIV. 391.

EXERCISE LXII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Argentūm, i, n.	silver.
Avāritiā ae. f.	avarice.
Bōnitās, bōnitātis, f.	goodness, excellence.
Elōquens, elōquentis,	eloquent.
Ferrūm, i, n.	iron.
Foedūs, ā, ūm,	detestable.
Prētiōsūs, ā, ūm,	valuable.
Quām, conj.	than.
Scientiā, ae, f.	knowledge.
Turrīs, turrīs, f.	tower.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Virtus mihi ¹ *gloriā* ² est carior. 2. Patria mihi *vitā* ² meā est carior. 3. Quid est jucundius *amicitiā* ? 4. Quid foedius est *avaritiā* ? 5. Aurum argento pretiosius est. 6. Anīmus corpore est nobilior. 7. Turrīs altior erat quam murus.³ 8. Quid multitudīni ¹ gratius quam libertas est ? 9. Pater tuus est sapientior quam tu.⁴ 10. Quis eloquentior fuit quam Demosthēnes ?

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Silver is more valuable than *iron*.² 2. Virtue is more valuable than *gold*. 3. Wisdom is more valuable than *money*. 4. Will not wisdom be more useful to you than gold ? 5. Wisdom will be more useful to me than gold. 6. Goodness is more valuable than ⁵ knowledge. 7. Good-

¹ See Rule XIV. 391.

² Ablative, depending upon the comparative without *quam*, according to Rule XXIII.

³ In the same case as *turrīs*, the corresponding noun before *quam*. It is the subject of *erat* understood.

⁴ Subject of *es* understood.

⁵ In this and the following examples use *quam*, according to 417, 1.

ness is dearer to us than glory. 8. The Romans were braver than the Gauls. 9. The soldiers were braver than the general.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

420. This Ablative designates

I. The PLACE IN WHICH any thing is or is done :

II. The PLACE FROM WHICH any thing proceeds, including *Source* and *Separation*.

RULE XXVI.—Ablative of Place.

421. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Genitive :

I. Hannibal in Italiā¹ fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep. In nostris castris, *In our camps*. Caes. In Appiā viā, *On the Appian Way*. Cic. Ab urbe proficiscitur, *He departs from the city*. Caes. Ex Africā, *From Africa*. Liv.

II. Athēnis² fuit, *He was at Athens*. Cic. Bābŷlōne mortuus est, *He died at Babylon*. Cic. Fūgit Cōrintho, *He fled from Corinth*. Cic. Rōmac² fuit, *He was at Rome*. Cic.

EXERCISE LXIII.

I. Vocabulary.

A, ūb, *prep. with abl.*

from, by.

Bābŷlōn, Bābŷlōnis, *f.*

Babylon, the city of.

¹ In Italiā, in castris, and in viā designate the PLACE IN WHICH; while ab urbe and ex Africā designate the PLACE FROM WHICH. They are in the Ablative with a preposition.

² Athēnis, Bābŷlōne, and Cōrintho, being names of towns, omit the preposition; while Romae, also the name of a town, is in the Genitive, as it is in the Singular of the First declension.

Cōrīnthūs, ī, <i>f.</i>	<i>Corinth</i> , city in Greece.
Diōnysīūs, īī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Dionysius</i> , tyrant of Syracuse.
Hābitō, āre, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to dwell, reside.</i>
Hortūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>garden.</i>
Laetitiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>joy.</i>
Lūcūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>grove.</i>
Rēgiō, rēgiōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>region, territory.</i>
Sēnātor, sēnātoris, <i>m.</i>	<i>senator.</i>
Trīgintā,	<i>thirty.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Hannībal *in Hispaniā*¹ fuit. 2. Latinus *in Italiā* regnāvit. 3. Latīnus in illis regionībus regnābat. 4. Cives ab urbe² fugiēbant. 5. Themistōcles e Graeciā fugit. 6. Sex menses³ *Athēnis*⁴ fui. 7. Alexander *Babylōne* erat. 8. Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsis fugit. 9. Themistōcles *Athēnis* fugit. 10. *Athēnis* habitābat. 11. Romūlus *Romae*⁵ regnāvit. 12. *Romae* ingens laetitia fuit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Is not your father *in Italy*? 2. My father is *in Greece*. 3. Were you not in Greece? 4. We resided in Greece three years. 5. Who is in the garden? 6. My brother is in the garden. 7. The pupils were walking in the fields. 8. The nightingales are singing in the groves. 9. Your father resided many years *at Athens*. 10. Did he not reside at Carthage? 11. He resided four years at Carthage. 12. Did you not receive my letter *at Rome*? 13. I received your letter at Corinth.

¹ Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, with the preposition *in*. See Rule XXXII.

² Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH, with the preposition *ab*.

³ See Rule VIII.

⁴ In the Ablative, without a preposition, because it is the name of a town.

⁵ In the Genitive, because it is the name of a town, and is in the Singular of the First declension.

ABLATIVE OF TIME.

RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octōgēsīmo anno¹ est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year.* Cic. Vēre convēnēre, *They assembled in the spring.* Liv. Nātālī die suo, *On his birth-day.* Nep. Hiēme et aestāte, *In winter and summer.* Cic.

1. DESIGNATIONS OF TIME.—Any word so used as to involve the time of an action or event may be put in the ablative: *bello*, in the time of war; *pugnā*, in the time of battle; *lūdis*, at the time of the games; *mēmōriā*, in memory, i.e., in the time of one's recollection.

EXERCISE LXIV.

I. Vocabulary.

Brūtus, i, m.	<i>Brutus, a Roman patriot.</i>
Dēflāgrō, āre, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to burn, be consumed.</i>
Diānā, ae, f.	<i>Diana, a goddess.</i>
Ephēsiūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Ephesian, of Ephesus.</i>
Hiems, hiēmis, f.	<i>winter.</i>
Nātālīs, ē,	<i>belonging to one's birth, natal.</i>
Nātālīs diēs,	<i>birth-day.</i>
Pompēiūs, ii, m.	<i>Pompey, Roman general.</i>
Persae, ārūm, m. plur.	<i>Persians.</i>
Scribō, scribēre, scripsī, scriptūm,	<i>to write.</i>
Tempūs, tempōris, n.	<i>time.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Natālī die² tuo scripsisti epistolam. 2. Eōdem die epistolam tuam accēpi.³ 3. Pompēius urbem tertio mense

¹ Anno, vere, die, hiēme, and aestāte are all in the Ablative, by this Rule.

² Ablative of Time, according to Rule XXVIII.

³ From accipio.

cepit. 4. Eodem *die* Persae superāti sunt. 5. Pompēius illo tempore miles fuit. 6. Illo anno Diānae Ephesiae templum deflagrāvit. 7. Occāsu solis hostes fugāti sunt. 8. Illo die Brutus patriam servāvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Were you not in Athens¹ *at that time*? 2. We were at Corinth² *at that time*. 3. Do you not reside in the city¹ *in winter*? 4. We reside in this beautiful city in the winter. 5. The city was taken at sunset. 6. Were you not in the city at that hour? 7. I was in the city at that time. 8. Were you not in Rome² on your birth-day? 9. I was in that city on my birth-day.

SECTION VIII.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions:

Ad amicum³ scripsi, *I have written to a friend*. Cic. In curiam, *Into the senate-house*. Liv. In Italiā, *In Italy*. Nep. Pro castris, *Before the camp*.

433. The ACCUSATIVE is used with

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, apud, circa, circum, circiter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pēnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prōpe, propter, secundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus:

Ad urbem, *To the city*. Cic. Adversus deos, *Toward the gods*. Cic.

434. The ABLATIVE is used with

A or ab (abs),	absque,	cōram,	cum,	de,
e or ex,	prae,	pro,	sine,	tēnus:

¹ Ablative of Place. See Rule XXVI.

² Genitive of Place. See Rule XXVI. II.

³ The Accusative *amicum* is here used with the preposition *ad*; *curiam*, with *in*; the Ablative *Italiā*, with *in*. See 435, 1.

Ab urbe, *From the city*. Caes. Cōram conventu, *In the presence of the assembly*. Nep.

435. The ACCUSATIVE or ABLATIVE is used with

In, sub, subter, sūper:

In Asiam prōfūgit, *He fled into Asia*. Cic. Hannibal in Itāliā fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep.

1. *In* and *Sub* take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither*, the Ablative in answer to *where*: In Asiam, (*whither?*) *into Asia*; In Itāliā, (*where?*) *in Italy*.

EXERCISE LXV.

I. Vocabulary.

Adversūs, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>against.</i>
Dimicō, āre, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to fight.</i>
Pēr, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>of, through.</i>
Prospērē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>successfully.</i>
Prōvōcō, āre, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to challenge.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Lacedaemonii hostes ad *proelium* provocābant. 2. Scipio contra *Hannōnem*, ducem Carthaginiensium, prospere pugnat. 3. Caesar adversus Pompēium dimicāvit. 4. Veritas per se¹ mihi grata est. 5. Virtus per se laudabilis est. 6. Persae a *Graecis*² superāti sunt. 7. Cicero de *amicitiā* scripsit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Will not the army be led back to *the city*? 2. It has been led back to *the city*. 3. Will you not write to me? 4. I will write to you. 5. Friendship is valuable of itself. 6. Have you not received five letters from *me*? 7. I have received four letters from *you*. 8. I have received two letters from your brother.

¹ *Per se*, literally *through itself*: render *in itself* or *of itself*.

² *A Graecis*, by the Greeks. See 414, 5.

SUGGESTIONS TO THE LEARNER.

I. THE preparation of a Reading Lesson in Latin involves,

1. A knowledge of the Meaning of the Latin.
2. A knowledge of the Structure of the Latin Sentences.
3. A translation into English.

MEANING OF THE LATIN.

II. Remember that almost every inflected word in a Latin sentence requires the use of both the Dictionary and the Grammar to ascertain its meaning.

The Dictionary gives the meaning of the word, without reference to its Grammatical properties of *case, number, mood, tense*, etc.; and the Grammar, the meaning of the endings which mark these properties. The Dictionary will give the meaning of *mensa*, a table, but not of *mensârum*, of tables: the Grammar alone will give the force of the ending *arum*.

III. Make yourself so familiar with all the endings of inflection, with their exact form and force, whether in declension or conjugation, that you will not only readily distinguish the different parts of speech from each other, but also the different forms of the same word, with their exact and distinctive force.

IV. In taking up a Latin sentence,

1. Notice carefully the endings of the several words, and thus determine which words are *nouns*, which *verbs*, etc.
2. Observe the force of each ending, and thus determine *case, number, voice, mood, tense*, etc.

This will be found to be a very important step toward the mastery of the sentence. By this means, you will discover not only the relation of the words to each other, but also an important part of their meaning,—that which they derive from their endings.

V. The key to the meaning of any simple sentence (345, I.) will be found in the simple subject and predicate; i.e., in the Nominative and its Verb. Hence, in looking out the sentence, observe the following order. Take

1. The Subject, or Nominative.

The ending will, in most instances, enable you to distinguish this from all other words, except the adjectives which agree with it. These may be looked out at the same time with the subject.

Sometimes the subject is not expressed, but only implied, in the ending of the verb. It may then be readily supplied, as it is always a pronoun of such person and number as the verb indicates: as, *audio*, I hear, the ending *io* showing that the subject is *ego*; *auditis*, you hear, the ending *itis* showing that the subject is *vos*.

2. The Verb, with Predicate Noun or Adjective, if any.

This will be readily known by the ending. Now, combining this with the Subject, you will have an outline of the sentence. All the other words must now be associated with these two parts.

3. The Modifiers of the Subject; i.e., adjectives agreeing with it, nominatives in apposition with it, genitives dependent upon it, etc.

But perhaps some of these have already been looked out in the attempt to ascertain the subject.

In looking out these words, bear in mind the meaning of the subject to which they belong. This will greatly aid you in selecting from the dictionary the true meaning in the passage before you.

4. The Modifiers of the Verb, i.e. (1) Oblique cases, accusatives, datives, etc., dependent upon it, and (2) Adverbs qualifying it.

Bear in mind all the while the force of the case and the meaning of the verb, that you may be able to select for each word the true meaning in the passage before you.

VI. In complex and compound sentences (345, II., III.), discover first the connectives which unite the several members, and then proceed with each member as with a simple sentence.

VII. In the use of Dictionary and Vocabulary, remember that you are not to look for the particular form which occurs in the sentence, but for the Nom. Sing. of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and for the First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of verbs. Therefore,

1. In Pronouns, make yourself so familiar with their declension, that any oblique case will at once suggest the Nom. Sing.

If *vobis* occurs, you must remember that the Nom. Sing. is *tu*.

2. In Nouns and Adjectives, make yourself so familiar with the case-endings, that you will be able to drop that of the given case, and substitute for it that of the Nom. Sing.

Thus *mensibus*; stem *mens*, Nom. Sing. *mensis*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *urbem, urb, urbs*.

3. In Verbs, change the ending of the given form into that of the First Pers. Sing. of the Pres. Indic. Act.

Thus *amābat*; stem *am*, First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. *amo*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *amavērunt*; First Pers. Perf. *amāvi*, Perf. stem *amav*, Verb stem *am*; *amo*.

To illustrate the steps recommended in the preceding suggestions, we add the following

Model.

VIII. Themistōcles imperātor servitūte totam Graeciam liberāvit.

1. Without knowing the meaning of the words, you will discover from their *forms*,

1) That *Themistōcles* and *imperātor* are probably nouns in the Nom. Sing.

2) That *servitūte* is a noun in the Abl. Sing.

3) That *totam* and *Graeciam* are either nouns or adjectives in the Accus. Sing.

4) That *liberāvit* is a verb in the Act. voice, Indic. mood, Perf. tense, Third Person, Singular number.

2. Now, turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, you will learn,

1) That *Themistōcles* is the name of an eminent Athenian general: THEMISTOCLES.

2) That *liběro*, for which you must look, not for *liberāvī*, means *to liberate*: LIBERATED.

Themistocles liberated.

3) That *imperātor* means *commander*: THE COMMANDER.

Themistocles the commander liberated.

4) That *Graeciam* is the name of a country: GREECE.

Themistocles the commander liberated Greece.

5) That *totus* means *the whole, all*: ALL.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece.

6) That *servītus* means *servitude*: FROM SERVITUDE.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece from servitude.

STRUCTURE OF THE LATIN SENTENCE.

IX. The structure of a sentence is best shown by *analyzing*¹ it, and by *parsing* the words which compose it.

Parsing.

XVII.² In parsing a word,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.

2. Inflect³ it, if capable of inflection.

3. Give its gender, number, case, voice, mood, tense, person, etc.⁴

4. Give its Syntax, and the Rule for it.⁵

TRANSLATION.

XIX. In translating, render as literally as possible without doing violence to the English.

¹ It has not been thought advisable to enter upon the subject of *analysis* at this early stage of the course. That will be presented in the Reader, which follows this work.

² These suggestions are taken, without change, from the Reader. Accordingly, the numerals are made to correspond to those in that work.

³ Inflect; i.e., decline, compare, or conjugate.

⁴ That is, such of these properties as it possesses.

⁵ For Models for Parsing, see pp. 16, 22, 24, 33, 55, 57, 59, 66, 71, and 73.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

For Explanation of Abbreviations and References, see p. ix.

A.

A, āb, prep. with abl. From, by.
Accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptum.
To receive.
Acēr, ācris, ācre. Sharp, severe,
valiant.
Aciēs, āciēi, f. Order of battle, bat-
tle-array, army.
Ad, prep. with acc. To, towards,
near.
Administrō, āre, āvi, ātum. To ad-
minister, manage.
Admoneō, admoneere, admōnuī, ad-
mōnitum. To admonish.
Adventus, ūs, m. Arrival, approach.
Adversus, prep. with acc. Against.
Aedificō, āre, āvi, ātum. To build.
Aestas, aestatis, f. Summer.
Agēr, āgrī, m. Field, land.
Aggēr, aggeris, m. Mound, ram-
part.
Agis, Agidis, m. Agis, a king of
Sparta.
Albanus, ā, ūm. Alban.
Alexander, Alexandri, m. Alexan-
der, the Great.
Aliquis, aliquā, aliquid or aliquod.
Some, some one. See 191.
Altus, ā, ūm. High, lofty.
Amans, amantis. Loving, fond of.

Ambulō, āre, āvi, ātum. To walk.
Amicitia, ae, f. Friendship.
Amicus, ā, ūm. Friendly.
Amicus, ī, m. Friend.
Amnis, amnis, m. River.
Amō, āre, āvi, ātum. To love.
Amor, amoris, m. Love.
Ampliō, āre, āvi, ātum. To enlarge.
Ancus, ī, m. Ancus, a Roman king.
Animāl, animālis, n. Animal.
Animus, ī, m. Soul, mind, passion,
disposition.
Annulus, ī, m. Ring.
Annus, ī, m. Year.
Antē, prep. with acc. Before.
Antiquus, ā, ūm. Ancient.
Apis, āpis, f. Bee.
Appellō, āre, āvi, ātum. To call.
Appetens, appetentis. Desiring,
striving for.
Apud, prep. with acc. In the pres-
ence of, near, before, among.
Apulia, ae, f. Apulia, a country in
Italy.
Arabs, Arabis, m and f. Arab, an
Arab.
Arctē, adv. Closely, soundly.
Argentum, ī, n. Silver.
Arō, ārāre, ārāvi, ārātum. To
plough.

Arrogantiā, ae, *f.* *Arrogance.*
 Ars, artis, *f.* *Art, skill.*
 Artaxerxēs, is, *m.* *Artaxerxes, a Persian king.*
 Arx, arcis, *f.* *Citadel, fortress.*
 Athēnae, arūm, *f. plur.* *Athens, the capital of Attica.*
 Athēniensis, ē. *Athenian.*
 Athēniensis, is, *m. and f.* *Athenian, an Athenian.*
 Atticus, ī, *m.* *Atticus, a Roman name.*
 Audiō, irē, ivi, itum. *To hear.*
 Auditor, auditoris, *m.* *Hearer, auditor.*
 Aureus, ū, um. *Golden.*
 Aurum, ī, *n.* *Gold.*
 Avāritiā, ae, *f.* *Avarice.*
 Avīdus, ū, um. *Desirous of, eager for.*
 Avis, avis, *f.* *Bird.*

B.

Bābylōn, Bābylōnis, *f.* *Babylon, the celebrated capital of the Assyrian Empire, on the banks of the Euphrates.*
 Beātus, ū, um. *Happy, blessed.*
 Bellum, ī, *n.* *War, warfare.*
 Bēnē, *adv.* *Well.*
 Bēnignē, *adv.* *Kindly.*
 Bōnitas, bōnitatis, *f.* *Goodness, excellence.*
 Bōnus, ū, um. *Good.*
 Brēvis, ē. *Short, brief.*
 Brūtus, ī, *m.* *Brutus, a celebrated Roman patriot.*

C.

Caesār, Caesāris, *m.* *Cæsar, a celebrated Roman commander.*
 Cāius, ii, *m.* *Caius, a proper name.*

Cāmillus, ī, *m.* *Camillus, a Roman general.*
 Campūs, ī, *m.* *Plain.*
 Cānis, cānis, *m. and f.* *Dog.*
 Cantō, arē, avi, atum. *To sing.*
 Cantus, ūs, *m.* *Singing, song.*
 Cāpiō, cāpērē, cēpi, captum. *To take, capture.*
 Cāpūt, cāpitis, *n.* *Head, capital.*
 Carmēn, carminis, *n.* *Song, poem, verse.*
 Carthāgīniensis, ē. *Carthaginian.*
 Carthāgīniensis, is, *m. and f.* *A Carthaginian.*
 Carthāgō, Carthāgīnis, *f.* *Carthage, a city of Northern Africa.*
 Carthāgō Nōvā. *New Carthage, Carthagera, a city of Spain.*
 Cārūs, ū, um. *Dear.*
 Cātō, Cātōnis, *m.* *Cato, a distinguished Roman.*
 Centum. *One hundred. See 175, 2.*
 Certāmen, certāminis, *n.* *Contest, strife, battle.*
 Cībūs, ī, *m.* *Food.*
 Cīcērō, Cīcērōnis, *m.* *Cicero, the celebrated Roman orator.*
 Cīvilis, ē. *Civil.*
 Cīvis, cīvis, *m. and f.* *Citizen.*
 Cīvitas, cīvitatis, *f.* *State, city.*
 Clārūs, ū, um. *Renowned, distinguished, illustrious.*
 Classis, classis, *f.* *Fleet, navy.*
 Coerceō, coercērē, coeui, coercitum. *To check.*
 Cōlō, cōlērē, cōlui, cultum. *To practise, cultivate.*
 Commūnis, ē. *Common.*
 Condemnō, arē, avi, atum. *To condemn.*
 Condītōr, condītōris, *m.* *Founder.*
 Conjux, conjūgis, *m. and f.* *Wife, husband, spouse.*

- Cōnōn, Cōnōnīs, *m.* *Conon*, an Athenian general.
 Conscientiā, *ae, f.* *Consciousness.*
 Consiliū, *ii, n.* *Design, plan.*
 Conspēctūs, *ūs, m.* *Sight, view, presence.*
 Consūl, consūlīs, *m.* *Consul.*
 Contrā, *prep. with acc.* *Against, opposite to, contrary to.*
 Convōcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To assemble, call together.*
 Cōrīnthūs, *i, f.* *Corinth*, city in Greece.
 Cornēliūs, *ii, m.* *Cornelius*, a Roman name.
 Cōrōnā, *ae, f.* *Crown.*
 Corpūs, corpōrīs, *n.* *Body, person.*
 Creō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To create, make, appoint, elect.*
 Crūdēlīs, *č.* *Cruel.*
 Crūdūs, ā, ūm. *Unripe.*
 Culpō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To blame.*
 Cūm, *prep. with abl.* *With.*
 Cūpīdūs, ā, ūm. *Desirous of.*
 Cūrēs, Cūriūm, *m. plur.* *Cures*, a Sabine town.
 Custōdiō, irē, ivī, itūm. *To guard.*
 Custōs, custōdīs, *m. and f.* *Keeper, guard.*
- D.*
- Dē, *prep. with abl.* *Concerning.*
 Dēbeō, dēbērē, dēbuī, dēbitūm. *To owe.*
 Dēcēm. *Ten.* See 175.
 Dēcīmūs, ā, ūm. *Tenth.*
 Dēfectiō, dēfectiōnīs, *f.* *Eclipse.*
 Dēflāgrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To burn, be consumed.*
 Dēlectō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To delight, please.*
 Dēmārātūs, *i, m.* *Demaratus*, a Corinthian.
- Dēmōsthēnēs, *is, m.* *Demosthenes*, the celebrated Athenian orator.
 Diānā, *ae, f.* *Diana*, the goddess of the chase.
 Dīcō, dīcērē, dixī, dictūm. *To say, speak, tell.*
 Diēs, diēī, *m.* *Day.* See 119, note.
 Dīlīgēns, dīlīgētīs. *Diligent.*
 Dīlīgētiā, *ae, f.* *Diligence.*
 Dīmīcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To fight.*
 Diōnysiūs, *ii, m.* *Dionysius*, tyrant of Syracuse.
 Discīpūlūs, *i, m.* *Pupil.*
 Dīsērtē, *adv.* *Clearly, eloquently.*
 Displicēō, displicērē, displicuī, displicītūm. *To displease.*
 Dīvinūs, ā, ūm. *Divine.*
 Dōlōr, dōlōrīs, *m.* *Pain, grief, suffering.*
 Dōnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To give, present.*
 Dōnūm, *i, n.* *Gift.*
 Dormiō, irē, ivī, itūm. *To sleep.*
 Drācō, Drācōnīs, *m.* *Draco*, an Athenian lawgiver.
 Dūcentī, *ae, ā.* *Two hundred.*
 Dūcō, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm. *To lead.*
 Dulcīs, *č.* *Sweet, pleasant.*
 Duō, *ae, ō.* *Two.* See 176.
 Dūplīcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To double, increase.*
 Dux, dūcīs, *m. and f.* *Leader, general.*
- E.*
- E, *ex, prep. with abl.* *From.*
 Ebriētās, ēbriētātīs, *f.* *Drunkenness.*
 Educō, educērē, eduxī, eductūm. *To lead forth, lead out.*
 Effūgiō, effūgērē, effūgi, effūgītūm. *To escape.*
 Egō, meī. *I.* See 184.

Egrēgius, ā, ūm. *Distinguished.*
 Egrēgiē, *adv. Excellently.*
 Elēphantus, ī, m. *Elephant.*
 Elōquens, elōquentis. *Eloquent.*
 Elōquentiā, ae, f. *Eloquence.*
 Ephēsītus, ā, ūm. *Ephesian, of Ephesus.*
 Epīrus, ī, f. *Epirus, a country in Greece.*
 Epistolā, ae, f. *Letter.*
 Erūdiō, irē, ivī, itūm. *To instruct, refine, educate.*
 Erūdītus, ā, ūm. *Learned, instructed in.*
 Ex, *prep. with abl. From.*
 Exerceō, exercērē, exercui, exercitūm. *To exercise, train.*
 Exercītus, ūs, m. *Army.*
 Expugnō, ārē, avī, atūm. *To take, take by storm.*
 Exspectō, ārē, avī, atūm. *To await, expect.*
 Exsul, exsulīs, m. and f. *Exile.*

F.

Fāciēs, fāciēi, f. *Face, appearance.*
 Ferrūm, ī, n. *Iron.*
 Fertīlis, ē. *Fertile.*
 Fīdēlītās, fīdēlītātis, f. *Fidelity, faithfulness.*
 Fīdēs, fidei, f. *Faith, fidelity.*
 Fīdus, ā, ūm. *Faithful.*
 Filiā, ae, f. *Daughter.*
 Filius, ii, m. *Son.*
 Fīniō, irē, ivī, itūm. *To finish, bring to a close.*
 Fīnis, finis, m. *Limit, territory.*
 Firmō, ārē, avī, atūm. *To strengthen, confirm.*
 Flāminīus, ii, m. *Flaminius, a Roman general.*
 Flōs, flōris, m. *Flower.*
 Foedus, ā, ūm. *Detestable.*

Fons, fontis, m. *Fountain.*
 Fortis, ē. *Brave.*
 Fortitēr, *adv. Bravely.*
 Fortitūdō, fortitūdīnis, f. *Bravery, fortitude.*
 Fossā, ae, f. *Ditch, moat.*
 Frāter, frātris, m. *Brother.*
 Fructus, ūs, m. *Fruit, produce, income.*
 Frumentūm, ī, n. *Corn, grain.*
 Fūgā, ae, f. *Flight.*
 Fūgiō, fūgērē, fūgī, fūgītūm. *To flee, fly, run away.*
 Fūgō, ārē, avī, atūm. *To rout, drive away.*
 Fūnestus, ā, ūm. *Destructive.*
 Fūrōr, fūrōris, m. *Madness, insanity.*

G.

Gallus, ī, m. *Gallus, a proper name.*
 Gallus, ī, m. *Gaul, a Gaul, an inhabitant of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.*
 Gemmā, ae, f. *Gem.*
 Gēnēr, gēnērī, m. *Son-in-law.*
 Gens, gentis, f. *Race.*
 Germāniā, ae, f. *Germany.*
 Glādius, ii, m. *Sword.*
 Glōbōsus, ā, ūm. *Spherical.*
 Glōriā, ae, f. *Glory.*
 Graeciā, ae, f. *Greece.*
 Graecus, ā, ūm. *Grecian, Greek.*
 Graecus, ī, m. *Greek, a Greek.*
 Grātiā, ae, f. *Favor, gratitude, thanks.*
 Grātus, ā, ūm. *Acceptable, pleasing.*
 Grex, grēgis, m. *Herd, flock.*

H.

Hābeō, hābērē, hābuī, hābitūm. *To have, hold.*
 Hābitō, ārē, avī, atūm. *To dwell, reside.*

Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, *m.* *Hannibal*, a celebrated Carthaginian general.

Hannō, Hannōnīs, *m.* *Hanno*, a Carthaginian general.

Hastā, *ae, f.* *Spear.*

Hic, haec, hoc. *This.*

Hiems, hiēmīs, *f.* *Winter.*

Hirundō, hirundīnīs, *f.* *Swallow.*

Hispāniā, *ae, f.* *Spain.*

Hispānūs, *i, m.* *A Spaniard.*

Hōmērūs, *i, m.* *Homer*, the celebrated Grecian poet.

Hōmō, hōmīnīs, *m.* *Man.*

Hōnōr, hōnōrīs, *m.* *Honor.*

Hōrā, *ae, f.* *Hour.*

Hostīs, hostīs, *m. and f.* *Enemy.*

I.

Idēm, eādēm, idēm. *Same, the same.* See 186.

Ignōrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To be ignorant of, not to know.*

Illē, illā, illūd. *That, he, she, it.* See 186.

Illustrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To illustrate, illumine.*

Imāgō, imāgīnīs, *f.* *Image, picture.*

Impātiens, impātiētīs. *Impatient.*

Impērātōr, impērātōrīs, *m.* *Commander.*

Impēriūm, *ii, n.* *Reign, power, government.*

Impētūs, ūs, *m.* *Attack.*

Imprōbitās, imprōbitātīs, *f.* *Wickedness.*

In, *prep. with acc. and abl.* *Into, in, within.*

Incertūs, ā, ūm. *Uncertain.*

Indicō, indicērē, indixī, indictūm. *To declare.*

Infestō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To infest.*

Ingens, ingentīs. *Huge, large, great.*

Innocens, innocentīs. *Innocent.*

Insāniā, *ae, f.* *Insanity.*

Insulā, *ae, f.* *Island.*

Intēr, *prep. with acc.* *Between, among, in the midst of.*

Intrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To enter.*

Inventōr, inventōrīs, *m.* *Inventor.*

Invitō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To invite.*

Ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm. *Self, he, himself.*
See 186.

Is, eā, id. *That, he, she, it.*

Istē, istā, istūd. *That, such.* See 186.

Italiā, *ae, f.* *Italy.*

J.

Jaciō, jacerē, jeci, jactūm. *To cast, throw, hurl.*

Jām, *adv.* *Now, already.*

Jucundūs, ā, ūm. *Delightful, pleasant.*

Jūdex, jūdicīs, *m. and f.* *Judge.*

Jungō, jungērē, junxī, junctūm. *To join.*

Justitiā, *ae, f.* *Justice.*

Justūs, ā, ūm. *Upright, just.*

Jūvēnīs, jūvēnīs, *m. and f.* *A youth, young man.*

Jūventūs, jūventūtīs, *f.* *Youth, a youth, a young person.*

L.

Lābōr, lābōrīs, *m.* *Labor.*

Lābōrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To strive for, labor, work.*

Lācēdaemōniūs, *ii, m.* *Spartan, a Spartan, inhabitant of Sparta in Greece.*

Lactitiā, *ae, f.* *Joy.*

Lāpīs, lāpīdīs, *m.* *Stone.*

Lātīnē, *adv.* *In Latin.*

Lātīnūs, *i, m.* *Latinus, a Latin king.*

Lātūs, ā, ūm. *Broad.*

Laudābīlis, č. *Praiseworthy, laudable.*

Laudō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To praise.*

Laus, laudīs, *f. Praise.*

Lāvīniā, ac, *f. Lavinia, a proper name.*

Lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis, *f. Embassy.*

Lēgātūs, ī, *m. Ambassador.*

Lēgiō, lēgiōnis, *f. Legion, a body of soldiers.*

Lēgō, lēgērē, lēgī, lēctūm. *To choose, appoint.*

Leō, leōnis, *m. Lion.*

Lētālis, č. *Mortal, deadly.*

Lex, lēgis, *f. Law.*

Lībēr, librī, *m. Book.*

Lībērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To liberate.*

Libertās, libertātis, *f. Liberty.*

Longūs, ā, ūm. *Long.*

Lūcūs, ī, *m. Grove.*

Lūnā, ac, *f. Moon.*

Luscīniā, ac, *f. Nightingale.*

Lux, lūcis, *f. Light.*

Luxuriā, ac, *f. Luxury.*

Lycurgūs, ī, *m. Lycurgus, a Spartan lawgiver.*

Lysandēr, Lysandri, *m. Lysander, a Spartan general.*

M.

Mācēdōniā, ac, *f. Macedonia, Macedon, a country of Northern Greece.*

Māgistēr, māgistrī, *m. Master, teacher.*

Magnōpērē, *adv. Greatly.*

Magnūs, ā, ūm. *Great, large.*

Mālūm, ī, *n. Evil.*

Marcellūs, ī, *m. Marcellus, a celebrated Roman general.*

Mārē, mārīs, *n. Sea.*

Mātēr, matrīs, *f. Mother.*

Mātūrūs, ā, ūm. *Ripe.*

Mēmōriā, ac, *f. Memory.*

Mensā, ac, *f. Table.*

Mensis, mensis, *m. Month.*

Mercēs, mercēdis, *f. Reward.*

Mērcō, mērērē, mērui, mērītūm. *To deserve, merit.*

Meūs, ā, ūm. *My. See 135.*

Milēs, militīs, *m. Soldier.*

Miltiādēs, īs, *m. Miltiades, an Athenian general.*

Mōdestiā, ac, *f. Modesty.*

Mōneō, mōnērē, mōnuī, mōnītūm. *To advise.*

Mons, montīs, *m. Mountain.*

Monstrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To show, point out.*

Mōrā, ac, *f. Delay.*

Mors, mortīs, *f. Death.*

Multitūdō, multitūdīnis, *f. Multitude.*

Multūs, ā, ūm. *Much, many.*

Mundūs, ī, *m. World, universe.*

Mūniō, irē, ivī, itūm. *To fortify, defend.*

Mūnūs, mūnērīs, *n. Gift, present.*

Mūrūs, ī, *m. Wall.*

Mūtātiō, mūtātiōnis, *f. Change, phase.*

N.

Nātālis, č. *Belonging to one's birth, natal.*

Nātālis diēs. *Birth-day.*

Nātūrā, ac, *f. Nature.*

Nāvālis, č. *Naval.*

Nāvīgō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To sail to.*

Nāvis, nāvīs, *f. Ship.*

Nēcessāriūs, ā, ūm. *Necessary.*

Nēcessitās, nēcessitātis, *f. Necessity.*

Nēpūs, nēpōtis, *m. Grandson.*

Nōbīlis, č. *Noble.*

Nōmēn, nōmīnis, *n. Name.*

Nōmīnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To call, name.*

Nōn, *adv.* *Not.*

Nonnĕ, *interrog. part.* Expects the answer, *Yes.* See 346, II., 2.

Nostĕr, nostrā, nostrūm. *Our, our own, ours.*

Nōvītās, nōvītātis, *f.* *Novelty.*

Nōvūs, ā, ūm. *New.*

Nox, noctis, *f.* *Night.*

Nūbēs, nūbīs, *f.* *Cloud.*

Nūm, *interrog. part.* Expects the answer, *No.* See 346, II., 1.

Nūmā, ae, *m.* *Numa, a Roman king.*

Nūmĕrūs, ī, *m.* *Number, quantity.*

Nummūs, ī, *m.* *Money, a piece of money, a coin.*

Nuntiō, āre, āvī, ātūm. *To proclaim, announce.*

O.

Obsēs, obsidīs, *m.* and *f.* *Hostage.*

Occāsūs, ūs, *m.* *Setting, going down.*

Occūpō, āre, āvī, ātūm. *To occupy, take possession of.*

Octāvūs, ā, ūm. *Eighth.*

Octō. *Eight.* See 175, 2.

Octōgintā. *Eighty.* See 175, 2.

Oculūs, ī, *m.* *Eye.*

Odiōsūs, ā, ūm. *Odious, hateful.*

Omnīs, ě. *All, every, whole.*

Oppidūm, ī, *n.* *Town, city.*

Oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātūm. *To besiege, take by storm.*

Optō, āre, āvī, ātūm. *To wish for, desire.*

Opulentūs, ā, ūm. *Rich, opulent.*

Opūs, ōpĕrīs, *n.* *Work.*

Orātiō, ōrātiōnīs, *f.* *Oration, speech.*

Orātōr, ōrātōrīs, *m.* *Orator.*

Orbīs, orbīs, *m.* *Circle.*

Orbīs terrārūm. *The world.*

Ornō, āre, āvī, ātūm. *To adorn, be an ornament to.*

Ovis, ōvis, *f.* *Sheep.*

P.

Pārens, pārentīs, *m.* and *f.* *Parent.*

Pāreō, pārerē, pāruī, pāritūm. *To obey.*

Pars, partīs, *f.* *Part, portion.*

Parvūs, ā, ūm. *Small.*

Passĕr, passĕrīs, *m.* *Sparrow.*

Pastōr, pastōrīs, *m.* *Shepherd.*

Pātĕr, pātrīs, *m.* *Father.*

Pātriā, ae, *f.* *Native country, country.*

Paulūs, ī, *m.* *Paulus, a Roman consul.*

Pax, pācis, *f.* *Peace.*

Pĕcūniā, ae, *f.* *Money.*

Pellīs, pellīs, *f.* *Skin, hide.*

Pĕr, *prep. with acc.* *Of, through.*

Pĕrāgrō, āre, āvī, ātūm. *To wander through.*

Pĕritūs, ā, ūm. *Skilled in.*

Persā, ae, *m.* *A Persian.*

Pĕs, pĕdīs, *m.* *Foot.*

Philippūs, ī, *m.* *Philip, king of Macedon.*

Philōsophiā, ae, *f.* *Philosophy.*

Philōsophūs, ī, *m.* *Philosopher.*

Piētās, piētātīs, *f.* *Filial affection, piety, duty.*

Pīrātā, ae, *m.* *Pirate.*

Piscīs, piscīs, *m.* *Fish.*

Pisistrātūs, ī, *m.* *Pisistratus, tyrant of Athens.*

Plāceō, plācērē, plācuī, plācītūm. *To please.*

Plēnūs, ā, ūm. *Full.*

Poenūs, ā, ūm. *Carthaginian.*

Poenus, ī, *m.* *A Carthaginian.*

Pōmūm, ī, *n.* *Fruit.*

Pompiliūs, iī, *m.* *Pompilius, a Roman name.*

Pompēiūs, iī, *m.* *Pompey, a celebrated Roman general.*

Pondūs, pondĕrīs, *n.* *Weight, mass.*

Portūs, ūs, *m.* *Port, harbor.*

Post, *prep. with acc.* *After.*

Pōtens, pōtentīs. *Powerful, able.*

Praebeō, praebērē, praebuī, praebītūm. *To show, furnish, give.*

Praeceptōr, praeceptōrīs, *m.* *Teacher, instructor.*

Praeceptūm, ī, *n.* *Rule, precept.*

Praeclārūs, ā, ūm. *Renowned, distinguished.*

Praedicō, praedicērē, praedixī, praedictūm. *To predict, foretell.*

Praemiūm, īi, *n.* *Reward.*

Prātūm, ī, *n.* *Meadow.*

Prētiōsūs, ā, ūm. *Valuable.*

Prīmūs, ā, ūm. *First.*

Principiūm, īi, *n.* *Beginning.*

Prō, *prep. with abl.* *In behalf of, for.*

Proeliūm, īi, *n.* *Battle.*

Prospērē, *adv.* *Successfully.*

Prōvōcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To challenge.*

Prudentiā, ae, *f.* *Prudence.*

Publiūs, īi, *m.* *Publius, a Roman name.*

Puclā, ae, *f.* *Girl.*

Puēr, puērī, *m.* *Boy.*

Pugnā, ae, *f.* *Battle.*

Pugnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To fight.*

Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm. *Beautiful.*

Pūnicūs, ā, ūm. *Carthaginian, Punic.*

Pyrrhūs, ī, *m.* *Pyrrhus, a king of Epirus.*

Q.

Quām, *conj.* *Than.*

Quartūs, ā, ūm. *Fourth.*

Quattuōr. *Four.* See 175, 2.

Quī, quae, quōd, *rel. pronoun.* *Who, which, what.* See 187.

Quinquāgintā. *Fifty.* See 175, 2.

Quinquē. *Five.* See 175, 2.

Quintūs, ā, ūm. *Fifth.*

Quīs, quae, quīd? *interrog. pronoun.* *Who, which, what?* See 188.

Quīvīs, quacvīs, quodvīs, or quidvīs, *indef. pronoun.* *Whoever, whatever.* See 191.

Quōtīdiānūs, ā, ūm. *Daily.*

Quōtīdiē, *adv.* *Daily.*

R.

Rāmūs, ī, *m.* *Branch.*

Rātiō, rātiōnīs, *f.* *Reason.*

Rectē, *adv.* *Rightly.*

Rectūm, ī, *n.* *Right, rectitude.*

Rēducō, rēducērē, rēduxī, rēductūm. *To lead back.*

Rēginā, ae, *f.* *Queen.*

Rēgiō, rēgiōnīs, *f.* *Region, territory.*

Rēgūlūs, ī, *m.* *Regulus, a Roman general.*

Regnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To reign.*

Regnūm, ī, *n.* *Kingdom, royal authority.*

Rēgō, rēgērē, rexī, rectūm. *To rule.*

Rēnōvō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To renew.*

Rēs, rei, *f.* *Thing, affair.*

Rēs publicā. *Republic.*

Rēvōcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To recall.*

Rex, rēgis, *m.* *King.*

Rhēnūs, ī, *m.* *Rhine.*

Rōmā, ae, *f.* *Rome.*

Rōmānūs, ā, ūm. *Roman.*

Rōmānūs, ī, *m.* *Roman, a Roman.*

Rōmūlūs, ī, *m.* *Romulus, the founder of Rome.*

S.

Sāguntūm, ī, *n.* *Saguntum, a town in Spain.*

Sālūs, sālūtīs, *f.* *Safety.*
 Sālūtārīs, *č.* *Beneficial, salutary, advantageous.*
 Sālūtō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To salute.*
 Sanctūs, ā, ūm. *Holy, sacred.*
 Sāpiens, sāpientīs. *Wise.*
 Sāpientēr, *adv.* *Wisely.*
 Sāpientiā, *ae, f.* *Wisdom.*
 Schōlā, *ae, f.* *School.*
 Scientiā, *ae, f.* *Knowledge.*
 Scīpiō, Scīpiōnīs, *m.* *Scipio, a distinguished Roman.*
 Scribō, scribērē, scripsī, scriptūm. *To write.*
 Scythae, ārūm, *m. plur.* *The Scythians.*
 Sēcundūs, ā, ūm. *Second, favorable.*
 Sempēr, *adv.* *Always, ever.*
 Sēnātor, sēnātorīs, *m.* *Senator.*
 Sēnātūs, ūs, *m.* *Senate.*
 Sēnectūs, sēnectūtīs, *f.* *Old age.*
 Sensūs, ūs, *m.* *Feeling, perception, sense.*
 Sententiā, *ae, f.* *Opinion.*
 Sermō, sermōnīs, *m.* *Discourse, conversation.*
 Serviō, irē, ivī, itūm. *To serve.*
 Serviūs, iī, *m.* *Servius, a Roman proper name.*
 Servō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To preserve, keep, save.*
 Servūs, ī, *m.* *Slave.*
 Sex. *Six.* See 175, 2.
 Sīcīliā, *ae, f.* *Sicily.*
 Sīlentiūm, iī, *n.* *Silence.*
 Sīmīlīs, *č.* *Like.*
 Singulārīs, *č.* *Remarkable, singular.*
 Sōcēr, sōcērī, *m.* *Father-in-law.*
 Sōciūs, iī, *m.* *Ally, associate.*
 Sōcrātēs, īs, *m.* *Socrates, the celebrated Athenian philosopher.*
 Sōl, sōlīs, *m.* *Sun.*

Sōlōn, Sōlōnīs, *m.* *Solon, an Athenian legislator.*
 Sōlūm, ī, *n.* *Soil.*
 Spartā, *ae, f.* *Sparta, capital of Laconia.*
 Spēcīēs, spēcīēī, *f.* *Appearance.*
 Spērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To hope.*
 Spēs, spēī, *f.* *Hope.*
 Spōliō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To rob, spoil, despoil.*
 Stīmūlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To stimulate.*
 Stultītiā, *ae, f.* *Folly.*
 Suī, sībī. *Himself, herself, itself.*
 See 184.
 Sūm, essē, fuī. *To be.* See 204.
 Sūpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To conquer.*
 Supplicīūm, iī, *n.* *Punishment.*
 Suūs, ā, ūm. *His, her, its, their, his own, her own, its own, their own.*
 Sŷrācūsae, ārūm, *f. plur.* *Syracuse, a city of Sicily.*

T.

Tāceō, tācērē, tācui, tācītūm. *To be silent.*
 Tārentūm, ī, *n.* *Tarentum, an Italian town.*
 Tarquīniūs, iī, *m.* *Tarquin, a Roman king.*
 Tēlūm, ī, *n.* *Javelin, weapon.*
 Tēmērītās, tēmērītātīs, *f.* *Rashness.*
 Templūm, ī, *n.* *Temple.*
 Tempūs, tempōrīs, *n.* *Time.*
 Terrā, *ae, f.* *Land, earth.*
 Terreō, terrērē, terrui, terrītūm. *To frighten, terrify.*
 Tertiūs, ā, ūm. *Third.*
 Thālēs, īs, *m.* *Thales, a Grecian philosopher.*
 Thēbānūs, ā, ūm. *Theban, belonging to Thebes (a city in Greece).*

Thēbānūs, ī, *m.* *A Theban.*
 Thēmistōclēs, īs, *m.* *Themistocles, a celebrated Athenian.*
 Thrāsýbúlūs, ī, *m.* *Thrasylbulus, the liberator of Athens.*
 Tīcīnūs, ī, *m.* *Ticinus, a river of Cisalpine Gaul.*
 Trēs, triā. *Three. See 176.*
 Trīgintā. *Thirty. See 175, 2.*
 Triumpĥō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To triumph.*
 Trōjā, ae, *f.* *Troy, ancient city in Asia Minor.*
 Tū, tuī. *Thou, you. See 184.*
 Tullīā, ae, *f.* *Tullia, a Roman proper name.*
 Tullūs, ī, *m.* *Tullus, a Roman king.*
 Tūm, *adv.* *Then, at that time.*
 Turrīs, turrīs, *f.* *Tower.*
 Tuūs, ā, ūm. *Your, yours, thy, thine.*
 Týrannūs, ī, *m.* *Tyrant.*
 Týriūs, ā, ūm. *Tyrian.*

U.

Ulyssēs, īs, *m.* *Ulysses, a Grecian king.*
 Unīversūs, ā, ūm. *All, the whole, entire.*
 Unūs, ā, ūm. *One. See 176.*
 Urbs, urbīs, *f.* *City.*
 Usūs, ūs, *m.* *Use.*
 Utīlīs, ē. *Useful.*

V.

Vālētūdō, vālētūdīnīs, *f.* *Health.*
 Vāriētās, vāriētātīs, *f.* *Variety.*
 Vāriūs, ā, ūm. *Various.*
 Varrō, varrōnīs, *m.* *Varro, a Roman consul.*
 Vēr, vēris, *n.* *Spring.*
 Verbūm, ī, *n.* *Word.*

Vērēcundiā, ae, *f.* *Modesty.*
 Vērītās, vēritātīs, *f.* *Truth, verity.*
 Vērūs, ā, ūm. *True, real.*
 Vērūm, ī, *n.* *Truth.*
 Vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm. *Your.*
 Vestiō, irē, ivī, itūm. *To clothe.*
 Viā, ae, *f.* *Way, road.*
 Victōr, victōrīs, *m.* *Victor, conqueror.*
 Victōriā, ae, *f.* *Victory.*
 Victōriā, ae, *f.* *Victoria, Queen of England.*
 Vīgīlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To watch, be awake.*
 Vīlīs, ē. *Cheap.*
 Vīdex, vīdīcīs, *m.* and *f.* *Vindicator, avenger.*
 Vīolō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To violate.*
 Vīr, vīrī, *m.* *Man, hero, soldier.*
 Virgō, virgīnīs, *f.* *Maiden, girl.*
 Virtūs, virtūtīs, *f.* *Valor, virtue.*
 Vītā, ae, *f.* *Life.*
 Vītīūm, īi, *n.* *Fault, vice.*
 Vītūpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To find fault with, censure, blame.*
 Vīvō, vīvērē, vixī, victūm. *To live, reside.*
 Vōcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To call.*
 Vōlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To fly.*
 Vōluntāriūs, ā, ūm. *Voluntary.*
 Vōluptās, vōluptātīs, *f.* *Pleasure.*
 Vox, vōcīs, *f.* *Voice.*
 Vulnērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To wound.*
 Vulnūs, vulnērīs, *n.* *Wound.*
 Vultūr, vultūrīs, *m.* *Vulture.*
 Vultūs, ūs, *m.* *Countenance.*

X.

Xerxēs, īs, *m.* *Xerxes, a Persian king.*

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

A, an. *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article. See p. 12, note 1.*

Acceptable. *Grātūs, ā, ūm.*

Admonish. *Admōneō, admōnērē, admōnuī, admōnitūm.*

Adorned. *Ornātūs, ā, ūm.*

Advise. *Mōneō, mōnērē, mōnuī, mōnitūm.*

After. *Post, prep. with acc.*

Against. *Contrā, prep. with acc.*

Sometimes denoted by the Dative.

Alexander. *Alexandēr, Alexandrī, m.*

All. *Omnīs, ē.*

Always. *Sempēr, adv.*

Announce. *Nuntiō, āre, āvī, ātūm.*

Appoint. *Creō, āre, āvī, ātūm.*

Army. *Exercītūs, ūs, m.*

Arrival. *Adventūs, ūs, m.*

At. *Denoted by the Ablative of Place, or of Time. See 421 and 426.*

Athenian. *Athēniensīs, ē.*

Athenian, an Athenian. *Athēniensīs, īs, m. and f.*

Athens. *Athēnae, ārūm, f. plur.*

Attack. *Impellūs, ūs, m.*

Await. *Expectō, āre, āvī, ātūm.*

B.

Battle. *Proeliūm, ū, n.*

Battle-array. *Acies, ēi, f.*

Be. *Sūm, esse, fui.*

Be silent. *Taceō, tacērē, tacuī, tacitūm.*

Beautiful. *Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrum.*

Before. *Antē, prep. with acc.*

Bird. *Avīs, ūvīs, f.*

Birth-day. *Nātālīs diēs, m.*

Blame. *Vitūpērō, āre, āvī, ātūm.*

Book. *Liber, librī, m.*

Boy. *Puer, puērī, m.*

Brave. *Fortīs, ē.*

Bravely. *Fortitēr, adv.*

Bravery. *Virtūs, virtūtīs, f.*

Bring to a close. *Finio, ire, iui, itūm.*

Brother. *Frāter, frātrīs, m.*

Brutus. *Brūtus, ī, m.*

By. *A, ab, prep. with abl. Often denoted by the Ablative alone. See 414.*

C.

Caius. *Caiūs, ū, m.*

Call. *Vocō, āre, āvī, ātūm.*

Camillus. *Cāmillūs, ī, m.*

Can, can have. *See may, may have.*

Carthage. *Carthāgō, Carthāgīnīs, f.*

Carthaginian. *Carthāgīniensīs, ē.*

Carthaginian, a Carthaginian. *Carthāgīniensīs, īs, m. and f.*

Cato. *Cātō, Cātōnīs, m.*

Cicero. *Cicērō, Cicērōnīs, m.*

Citizen. *Civis, civis*, m. and f.
 City. *Urbs, urbis*, f.
 Cloud. *Nubes, nubis*, f.
 Commander. *Impērātor, impērātōris*, m.
 Concerning. *Dē*, prep. with abl.
 Consul. *Consul, consulis*, m.
 Contrary to. *Contrā*, prep. with acc.
 Conversation. *Sermō, sermonis*, m.
 Corinth. *Cōrinthūs, i*, f.
 Corinthian. *Cōrinthiūs, ā, ūm*.
 Corinthian, a Corinthian. *Cōrinthiūs, i*, m.
 Cornelius. *Cornēliūs, i*, m.
 Could, could have. See *might, might have*.
 Country. *Pātriā, ae*, f.
 Courage. *Virtūs, virtutis*, f.
 Crown. *Cōrōnā, ae*, f.

D.

Daily. *Quōtidiānūs, ā, ūm*.
 Daughter. *Filiā, ae*, f.
 Day. *Diēs, diēi*, m. See 119, note.
 Dear. *Cārūs, ā, ūm*.
 Declare. *Indicō, indicērē, indicī, indictum*.
 Delight. *Dēlectō, āre, āvi, ātum*.
 Desirous of. *Cūpidūs, ā, ūm; āvidūs, ā, ūm*.
 Did. Often the sign of the Imperfect, or of the Perfect tense, especially in questions.
 Diligence. *Diligentiā, ae*, f.
 Diligent. *Diligens, diligentis*.
 Do. Often the sign of the Present tense, especially in questions.

E.

Eight. *Octō*. See 175, 2.
 Eighth. *Octāvūs, ā, ūm*.
 Enemy. *Hostis, hostis*, m. and f.

Exercise. *Exerceō, exercērē, exercui, exercitum*.

Exile. *Exsul, exsulis*, m. and f.
 Expect. *Exspectō, āre, āvi, ātum*.

F.

Father. *Pātēr, patrīs*, m.
 Father-in-law. *Sōcēr, socērī*, m.
 Fertile. *Fertilis, ē*.
 Fidelity. *Fidēs, fidēi*, f.
 Field. *Agēr, agrī*, m.
 Fifth. *Quintūs, ā, ūm*.
 Fifty. *Quinquāgintā*. See 175, 2.
 Fight. *Pugnō, āre, āvi, ātum*.
 Finish. *Finō, irē, ivi, itum*.
 Five. *Quinquē*. See 175, 2.
 Flee. *Fūgiō, fugērē, fugi, fugitum*.
 Flower. *Flōs, flōris*, m.
 Fly. *Vōlō, āre, āvi, ātum*.
 Foot. *Pēs, pedis*, m.
 Fond of. *Amans, amantis*.
 For. *Prō*, prep. with abl. In the sense of *because of*, it is denoted by the Ablative alone (414); and in the sense of *for the benefit of*, by the Dative (384).
 Fortify. *Mūniō, irē, ivi, itum*.
 Four. *Quattuor*. See 175, 2.
 Fourth. *Quartūs, ā, ūm*.
 Friend. *Amicūs, i*, m.
 Friendship. *Amicitia, ae*, f.
 From. *A, ab*, prep. with abl.
 Fruit. *Fructūs, ūs*, m.

G.

Garden. *Hortūs, i*, m.
 Gaul. *Gallūs, i*, m.
 Gem. *Gemmā, ae*, f.
 General. *Dux, dūcis*, m. and f.
 Gift. *Dōnūm, i*, n.
 Glory. *Glōriā, ae*, f.
 Gold. *Aurūm, i*, n.
 Golden. *Aureūs, ā, ūm*.

Good. *Bönūs, ā, ūm.*
 Goodness. *Bönītās, bönītāīs, f.*
 Govern. *Rējō, rējērē, rexī, rectum.*
 Great. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*
 Greece. *Graeciā, ae, f.*
 Grove. *Lūcūs, ī, m.*
 Guard. *Custōdiō, īrē, īvī, ūm.*

II.

Had. *Often the sign of the Pluperfect tense.*

Hannibal. *Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, m.*

Happy. *Beātūs, ā, ūm.*

Have. *Hābeō, hābērē, hābui, hābūtūm.*

Sometimes simply the sign of the Perfect tense; as, we have loved.

He, she, it. *Is, cū, ūd; illē, illā, illūd.* The pronoun is often implied in the ending of the verb.

He himself. *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm.*

Hear. *Audiō, īrē, īvī, ūm.*

High. *Altūs, altā, altūm.*

Himself. *Sui (184); ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm.*

His. *Suūs, ā, ūm.*

Hope (verb). *Spērō, arē, āvī, ātūm.*

Hope (noun). *Spēs, spēi, f.*

Hour. *Hōrā, ae, f.*

Hundred. *Centūm.* See 175, 2.

I.

I. *Egō, mei.* See 184.

In. *In, prep. with abl.*

In behalf of. *Prō, prep. with abl.*

Instruct. *Erūdiō, īrē, īvī, ūm.*

Instructor. *Praeceptōr, praeceptōrīs, m.*

Into. *In, prep. with acc.*

Invite. *Invitō, arē, āvī, ātūm.*

Iron. *Ferrūm, ī, n.*

Island. *Insulā, ae, f.*

It. See *he, she, it.*

Italy. *Italiā, ae, f.*

J.

Judge. *Jūdex, jūdīcis, m. and f.*

Justice. *Justitiā, ae, f.*

K.

Keep one's word. *Fidēm servārē.*

See p. 74, note 4.

Kindly. *Bēnignē, adv.*

King. *Rex, rēgis, m.*

Knowledge. *Scientiā, ae, f.*

L.

Large. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*

Latinus. *Lātinūs, ī, m.*

Lavinia. *Lāvīniā, ae, f.*

Law. *Lex, lēgis, f.*

Lead. *Dūcō, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm.*

Lead back. *Rēdūcō, rēdūcērē, rēduxī, rēductūm.*

Lead forth. *Edūcō, edūcērē, eduxī, eductūm.*

Let. *Render by the Subjunctive.* See 196, I., 2.

Leader. *Dux, dūcis, m. and f.*

Letter. *Epistolā, ae, f.*

Liberate. *Libērō, arē, āvī, ātūm.*

Life. *Vitā, ae, f.*

Like. *Similis, ē.*

Love. *Amō, arē, āvī, ātūm.*

M.

Macedonia. *Mācēdōniā, ae, f.*

Man. *Hōmō, hōmīnīs, m. Vir, virī, m.* The latter is used as a term of respect; a true or worthy man, a hero.

Many. *Multi, ae, ā, plur.*

May, can. *Signs of the Present Subjunctive.*

May have, can have. *Signs of the Perfect Subjunctive.*

Me. See *I.*

Memory. *Mēmōriā, ae, f.*

Might, could, would, should. *Signs of the Imperfect Subjunctive.*

Might have, could have, would have, should have. *Signs of the Pluperfect Subjunctive.*

Mind. *Anĩmũs, ĩ, m.*

Moat. *Fossă, ae, f.*

Money. *Pěcũniă, ae, f.*

Month. *Mensis, mensis, m.*

More. *Sign of the Comparative degree. See 160.*

Most. *Sign of the Superlative degree. See 160.*

Mound. *Aggěr, aggěrĩs, m.*

Mountain. *Mons, montis, m.*

Much. *Multũm, adv.*

My. *Meũs, ŧ, ũm. See 185.*

N.

Name. *Nõmẽn, nõmẽnĩs, n.*

Nightingale. *Luscĩniă, ae, f.*

Noble. *Nõblĩs, ě.*

Not. *Nõn, adv. Interrogative, nonnẽ.*

O.

Obey. *Păreõ, părěrẽ, păruĩ, părĩtũm.*

Observe. *Servõ, ārẽ, avĩ, atũm.*

Occupy. *Occũpõ, ārẽ, avĩ, atũm.*

Of. *Denoted by the Genitive. See 393.*

Of itself. *Pěr sẽ.*

On. *Often denoted by the Ablative of Time. See 426.*

One. *Unũs, ŧ, ũm. See 176.*

Oration. *Orătĩõ, orătĩõnĩs, f.*

Orator. *Orătõr, orătõrĩs, m.*

Our. *Nostěr, trũ, trũm.*

P.

Parent. *Părens, părentĩs, m. and f.*

Philip. *Philippũs, ĩ, m.*

Pisistratus. *Pisistrătũs, ĩ, m.*

Please. *Plăceõ, plăcěrẽ, plăcuĩ, plăcĩtũm.*

Pleasing. *Grătũs, ŧ, ũm.*

Pleasure. *Võluptăs, võluptătĩs, f.*

Plough. *Arõ, ārūrẽ, ārūrĩ, ārătũm.*

Plunder (verb). *Spõliõ, ārẽ, avĩ, atũm.*

Practise. *Exerceõ, exercěrẽ, exercuĩ, exercĩtũm.*

Praise (verb). *Laudõ, ārẽ, avĩ, atũm.*

Praise (noun). *Laus, laudĩs, f.*

Precept. *Praeceptũm, ĩ, n.*

Predict. *Praedicõ, praedicěrẽ, praedixĩ, praedictũm.*

Present (noun). *Dõnũm, ĩ, n.*

Publius. *Publũs, ĩĩ, m.*

Punish. *Pũniõ, ĩrẽ, ĩvĩ, ĩtũm.*

Pupil. *Discĩpũlũs, ĩ, m.*

Put to flight. *Fũgõ, ārẽ, avĩ, atũm.*

Q.

Queen. *Rěgĩnă, ae, f.*

R.

Receive. *Accĩpiõ, accĩpěrẽ, accẽpĩ, acceptũm.*

Reign, royal authority. *Regnũm, ĩ, n.*

Renowned. *Clărũs, ŧ, ũm.*

Reside. *Hăbitõ, ārẽ, avĩ, atũm.*

Rhine. *Rhẽnũs, ĩ, m.*

River. *Amnĩs, amnĩs, m.*

Roman. *Rõmănũs, ŧ, ũm.*

Roman, a Roman. *Rõmănũs, ĩ, m.*

Rome. *Rõma, ae, f.*

Romulus. *Rõmũlũs, ĩ, m.*

Rule. *Rěgõ, rěgěrẽ, rexĩ, rectũm.*

S.

Safety. *Sălũs, sălũtĩs, f.*

Same. *Idẽm, cădẽm, idẽm. See 186.*

Say. *Dicõ, dicěrẽ, dixĩ, dictũm.*

Save. *Servō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*
 Scipio. *Scipiō, Scipiōnis, m.*
 Senator. *Sēnātor, sēnātoris, m.*
 Serve. *Serviō, ire, ivi, itūm.*
 Servius. *Servius, i, m.*
 Setting. *Occāsūs, ūs, m.*
 Shall, will. *Signs of the Future tense.*
 Shall have, will have. *Signs of the Future Perfect tense.*
 Shepherd. *Pastor, pastoris, m.*
 Should, should have. *See might, might have.*
 Show. *Monstrō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*
 Sicily. *Siciliā, ae, f.*
 Silent. *See be silent.*
 Silver. *Argentūm, i, n.*
 Sing. *Cantō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*
 Singing, a song. *Cantūs, ūs, m.*
 Six. *Sex.* *See 175, 2.*
 Slave. *Servūs, i, m.*
 Sleep. *Dormiō, ire, ivi, itūm.*
 Soldier. *Milēs, militis, m.*
 Somebody, some one. *Aliquis, aliquā, ālyquid, or ālyquid.* *See 191.*
 Son. *Filiūs, i, m.*
 Son-in-law. *Gēnēr, gēnērī, m.*
 Song. *Carmēn, carminis, n.*
 Speak. *Dicō, dicere, dixi, dictūm.*
 State. *Civitas, civitatis, f.*
 Strengthen. *Firmō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*
 Sun. *Sol, solis, m.*
 Sunset. *Occāsūs solis.*
 Sword. *Gladiūs, i, m.*

T.

Take. *Cāpiō, cāperē, cēpi, captūm.*
 Take by storm. *Expugnō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*
 Tarquin. *Tarquinius, i, m.*
 Tell. *Dicō, dicere, dixi, dictūm.*
 Temple. *Templūm, i, n.*

Ten. *Dēcēm.* *See 175, 2.*
 Terrify. *Terreō, terrere, terrui, territūm.*
 Than. *Quām.* Often omitted, in which case the Ablative follows. *See 417.*
 That. *Illē, illā, illud.* *See 186*
 The. *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article.* *See p. 12, note 1.*
 Their. *Suūs, ā, ūm.*
 Then. *Tūm, adv.*
 Thing. *Rēs, rei, f.*
 This. *Hic, haec, hoc.* *See 186.*
 Threc. *Trēs, triā.* *See 176.*
 Time. *Tempūs, temporis, n.*
 To. *Ad, in, preps. with acc.* *To* is sometimes denoted by the Accusative, and sometimes by the Dative. *See 379 and 384*
 True. *Vērūs, ā, ūm.*
 Truth. *Vērūm, i, n.*
 Tullia. *Tulliā, ae, f.*
 Two. *Duō, duae, duō.* *See 176.*
 Tyrant. *Tyrannūs, i, m.*

U.

Use. *Usus, ūs, m.*
 Useful. *Utilis, ē.*

V.

Valor. *Virtūs, virtutis, f.*
 Valuable. *Prētiōsūs, ā, ūm.*
 Very. *Sometimes the sign of the Superlative.* *See 160.*
 Victoria. *Victoriā, ae, f.*
 Victory. *Victoriā, ae, f.*
 Violate. *Viōlō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*
 Virtue. *Virtūs, virtutis, f.*

W.

Walk. *Ambulō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*
 War. *Bellūm, i, n.*

Way. *Via*, ae, f.
 Well. *Bene*, adv.
 Who, which (relative). *Qui*, quae, quod. See 187.
 Who, which, what (interrogative)? *Quis*, quae, quid? *qui*, quae, quod? See 188.
 Wide. *Latus*, ō, ūm.
 Wife. *Conjux*, conjūgīs, f.
 Will, will have. See *shall*, *shall have*.
 Winter. *Hibernia*, hiēmīs, f.
 Wisdom. *Sapientia*, ae, f.
 Wise. *Sapientis*, sapientis.
 With. *Cum*, prep. with abl. Often denoted by the Ablative alone. See 414.

Word. *Verbum*, ī, n. To keep one's word, *fidem servare*. See p. 74, note 4.
 Would, would have. See *might*, *might have*.
 Wound. *Vulnere*, ō, āre, āvī, ālūm.
 Write. *Scribere*, scribēre, scripsī, scriptūm.

Y.

Year. *Annus*, ī, m.
 You. *Tu*, tuī. See 184.
 Your. *Tuus*, ō, ūm; *vester*, vestrū, vestrūm.
 Yourself. *Tu*, tuī ipsē.



Harkness's Elements of Latin Grammar.

This work is intended especially for those who do not contemplate a collegiate course, but it may be successfully used in any school where, for special reasons, a small grammar is deemed desirable. The beginner needs to store his mind at the outset with the laws of the language in such forms of statement as he can carry with him throughout his whole course of study. The convenience and interest of the student in this regard have been carefully consulted in the preparation of this manual. All the paradigms, rules, and discussions, have been introduced in the exact language of the author's Grammar, by which it may at any time be supplemented. While, therefore, in many schools this work will be found a sufficient Latin Grammar, it may be used in others, either as preparatory to the larger Grammar, or in connection with it.

No separate references to this volume will ever be needed in editions of Latin authors, as the numbering of the articles is the same as in the larger Grammar.

From Pres. COBLEIGH, Tennessee Wesleyan University.

"This work is very timely. I regard it as indispensable in many schools in the South."

From Prof. W. H. YOUNG, Ohio University.

"I most heartily commend this work. I have for some time felt its need. It seems to make your Latin course complete."

From Prof. C. G. HUDSON, Genesee Wesleyan Seminary, Lima, N. Y.

"I can heartily recommend it. I think that it is superior to all rivals."

From Prof. H. D. WALKER, Orangeville Academy, Pa.

"In my opinion, no work of Professor Harkness will be more widely used, or more valuable, than this. It supplies a want long felt by teachers. It is clear, thorough, and sufficiently extended for ordinary students."

From Prof. S. H. MANLEY, Cornell College, Iowa.

"I think it one of the finest compendiums of Grammar I have ever seen. It must prove of great service as a preparatory drill-book."

From Prof. L. F. PARKER, Iowa College.

"I feel under personal obligation for this new incentive and aid to classical study."

From H. F. LANE, High School, Templeton, Mass.

"It is *exactly* adapted to our wants. We use all of Harkness's books—Grammar, Reader, and Composition. We consider them emphatically 'the best.'"

From Prof. J. A. KELLER, Heidelberg College, Ohio.

"I was surprised to find so full an outline of Latin Grammar comprised within such narrow limits."

From Prof. M. B. BROWN, Notre-Dame University.

"In my opinion, it is just the book which has long been needed. It is a book to be learned *entire*, and is complete as far as it goes. Prof. Harkness deserves the thanks both of students and teachers."

From Rev. B. G. NORTHROP, Secretary of Board of Education, Conn.

"I am highly pleased with Harkness's Elements of Latin Grammar. Its brevity commends it for beginners and for all contemplating a partial Latin course of study."

HARKNESS'S LATIN GRAMMAR.

12mo, 355 pages.

Although this work has been published but a short time comparatively, it is recommended by and introduced into a large number of Colleges and Classical Schools, among which are the following:

BOWDOIN COLLEGE, Brunswick, Me.
BATES COLLEGE, Lewiston, Maine.
LEWISTON FALLS ACADEMY, Auburn, Me.
DOVER HIGH SCHOOL, Dover, N. H.
DARTMOUTH COLLEGE, Hanover, N. H.
NORWICH UNIVERSITY, Norwich, Vt.
GLENWOOD LADIES' SEMINARY, Brattleboro, Vt.
AMHERST COLLEGE, Amherst, Mass.
TUFTS COLLEGE, Medford, Mass.
PHILLIPS ACADEMY, Andover, Mass.
STATE NORMAL SCHOOL, Framingham, Mass.
HIGHLAND SCHOOL, Worcester, Mass.
NEWTON HIGH SCHOOL, Newton, Mass.
PUBLIC HIGH SCHOOL, Springfield, Mass.
ROXBURY LATIN SCHOOL, Roxbury, Mass.
LAWRENCE ACADEMY, Groton, Mass.
AUBURNDALE FEMALE SEMINARY, Auburndale, Mass.
SPENCER ACADEMY, Spencer, Mass.
JAMAICA PLAIN HIGH SCHOOL, Jamaica Plain, Mass.
BROWN UNIVERSITY, Providence, R. I.
UNIVERSITY GRAMMAR SCHOOL, Providence, R. I.
PUBLIC HIGH SCHOOL, Providence, R. I.
FRIENDS' BOARDING SCHOOL, Providence, R. I.
WARREN HIGH SCHOOL, Warren, R. I.
PROVIDENCE CONFERENCE SEMINARY, East Greenwich, R. I.
WESLEYAN UNIVERSITY, Middletown, Ct.
FREE ACADEMY, Norwich, Ct.
NEW LONDON ACADEMY, New London, Ct.
YALE COLLEGE, New Haven, Ct.
ROCHESTER UNIVERSITY, Rochester, N. Y.
MADISON UNIVERSITY, Hamilton, N. Y.
COLLEGE OF THE CITY OF NEW YORK.
CORTLAND ACADEMY, Homer, N. Y.
OSWEGO HIGH SCHOOL, Oswego, N. Y.
HAMILTON COLLEGE, Clinton, N. Y.
HOBART FREE COLLEGE, Geneva, N. Y.
CANANDAIGUA ACADEMY, Canandaigua, N. Y.
NEWTON HIGH SCHOOL, Newton, N. J.
HAVERFORD COLLEGE, West Haverford, Pa.
CLASSICAL AND MILITARY SCHOOL, Columbia, Pa.
SHURTLEFF COLLEGE, Upper Alton, Ill.
IOWA STATE UNIVERSITY, Iowa City, Iowa.
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN, Ann Arbor, Mich.

Harkness's Latin Grammar.

From Rev. Prof. J. J. OWEN, D. D., New York Free Academy.

"I have carefully examined Harkness's Latin Grammar, and am so well pleased with its plan, arrangement, and execution, that I shall take the earliest opportunity of introducing it as a text-book in the Free Academy."

From Mr. JOHN D. PHILBRICK, Superintendent of Public Schools, Boston, Mdss.

"This work is evidently no hasty performance, nor the compilation of a mere look maker, but the well-ripened fruit of mature and accurate scholarship. It is eminently practical, because it is truly philosophical."

From Mr. G. N. BIGELOW, Principal of State Normal School, Framingham, Mass.

"Harkness's Latin Grammar is the most satisfactory text-book I have ever used."

From Rev. DANIEL LEACH, Superintendent Public Schools, Providence, R. I.

"I am quite confident that it is superior to any Latin Grammar before the public. It has recently been introduced into the High School, and all are much pleased with it."

From Dr. J. B. CHAPIN, State Commissioner of Public Instruction in Rhode Island.

"The vital principles of the language are clearly and beautifully exhibited. The work needs no one's commendation."

From Mr. ABNER J. PHIPPS, Superintendent of Public Schools, Lowell, Mass.

"The aim of the author seems to be fully realized in making this 'a *useful* book, and as such I can cheerfully commend it. The clear and admirable manner in which the intricacies of the Subjunctive Mood are unfolded, is one of its marked features.

"The evidence of ripe scholarship and of familiarity with the latest works of German and English philologists is manifest throughout the book."

From Dr. J. T. CHAMPLIN, President of Waterville College.

"I like both the plan and the execution of the work very much. Its matter and manner are both admirable. I shall be greatly disappointed if it does not at once win the public favor."

From Prof. A. S. PACKARD, Bowdoin College, Brunswick, Maine.

"Harkness's Latin Grammar exhibits throughout the results of thorough scholarship. I shall recommend it in our next catalogue."

From Prof. J. J. STANTON, Bates College.

"We have introduced Harkness's Grammar into this Institution. It is much more logical and concise than any of its rivals."

From Mr. WM. J. ROLFE, Principal Cambridge High School.

"Notwithstanding all the inconveniences that must attend a change of Latin Grammars in a large school like mine, I shall endeavor to secure the adoption of Harkness's Grammar in place of our present text-book as soon as possible."

From Mr. L. R. WILLISTON, Principal Ladies' Seminary, Cambridge, Mass.

"I think this work a decided advance upon the Grammar now in use."

From Mr. D. B. HAGER, Princ. Eliot High School, Jamaica Plain, Mass.

"This is, in my opinion, *by far the best Latin Grammar ever published*. It is admirably adapted to the use of learners, being remarkably concise, clear, comprehensive, and philosophical. It will henceforth be used as a text-book in this school."

Harkness's Latin Grammar.

From Prof. C. S. HARRINGTON and Prof. J. C. VAN BENSCHOTEN, of the Wesleyan University.

"This work is clear, accurate, and happy in its statement of principles, is simple yet scholarly, and embraces the latest researches in this department of philological science. It will appear in our catalogue."

From Mr. ELBRIDGE SMITH, Principal Free Academy, Norwich, Ct.

"This is not only the best Latin Grammar, but one of the most thoroughly prepared school-books that I have ever seen. I have introduced the book into the Free Academy, and am much pleased with the results of a month's experience in the class-room."

From Mr. H. A. PRATT, Principal High School, Hartford, Ct.

"I can heartily recommend Harkness's new work to both teachers and scholars. It is, in my judgment, the best Latin Grammar ever offered to our schools."

From Mr. I. F. CADY, Principal High School, Warren, R. I.

"The longer I use Harkness's Grammar the more fully am I convinced of its superior excellence. Its merits must secure its adoption wherever it becomes known."

From Messrs. S. THURBER and T. B. STOCKWELL, Public High School, Providence.

"An experience of several weeks with Harkness's Latin Grammar enables us to say with confidence, that it is an improvement on our former text-book."

From Mr. C. B. GOFF, Principal Boys' Classical High School, Providence, R. I.

"The practical working of Harkness's Grammar is gratifying even beyond my expectations."

From Rev. Prof. M. H. BUCKHAM, University of Vermont.

"Harkness's Latin Grammar seems to me to supply the desideratum. It is philosophical in its method, and yet simple and clear in its statements; and this, in my judgment, is the highest encomium which can be bestowed on a text-book."

From Mr. E. T. QUIMBY, Appleton Academy, New Ipswich, N. H.

"I think the book much superior to any other I have seen. I should be glad to introduce it at once."

From Mr. H. ORCUTT, Glenwood Ladies' Seminary, W. Brattleboro', Vt.

"I am pleased with Harkness's Latin Grammar, and have already introduced it into this seminary."

From Mr. CHARLES JEWETT, Principal of Franklin Academy.

"I deem it an admirable work, and think it will supersede all others now in use; in the division and arrangement of topics, and in its mechanical execution, it is superior to any Latin Grammar extant."

From Mr. C. C. CHASE, Principal of Lowell High School.

"Prof. Harkness's Grammar is, in my opinion, admirably adapted to make the study of the Latin language agreeable and interesting."

From Mr. J. KIMBALL, High School, Dorchester, Mass.

"It meets my ideal of what is desirable in every grammar, to wit: compression of general principles in terse definitions and statements, for ready use; and fulness of detail, well arranged for reference."

Harkness's Cæsar.

This edition of Cæsar's Commentaries, intended to follow the Latin Reader, aims to introduce the student to an appreciative study of Latin authors. The text is the result of a careful collation of the several editions most approved by European scholars. The notes are intended to guide the faithful efforts of the learner, and to furnish him such collateral information as will enable him to understand the stirring events recorded in the Commentaries, and such special aid as will enable him to surmount real difficulties of construction and idiom. They will thus, it is hoped, render an acceptable service both to the instructor and the learner, by lightening the burden of the one, and by promoting the progress of the other. The dictionary has been prepared with special reference to the wants of the student.

The Life of Cæsar, the Map of Gaul, and the diagrams and illustrations which accompany the notes, will greatly add to the value of the work.

From Pres. AIKIN, Union College, N. Y.

"This edition of the Commentaries is admirably suited, not merely to give the student an acquaintance with his immediate text-book, but also to develop those habits of investigation, that thoughtfulness in regard to the scope of the whole subject, and that style of vigorous, tasteful, and idiomatic rendering, which are among the rarest, as they are certainly among the most important, results of classical study."

From S. H. TAYLOR, LL. D., Phillips Academy, Andover, Mass.

"The notes are prepared with a judicious appreciation of the wants of the pupil. They show the hand of the finished scholar, as well as of the experienced teacher."

From Prof. W. A. PACKARD, Princeton College, N. J.

"The notes are models of what the beginner needs to interest and guide him. The text is furnished with the best illustrations in the way of maps and plans."

From Prof. W. T. JOHNSON, Notre-Dame University, Ind.

"This is certainly an excellent text-book—superior to any other edition of the Commentaries now in use."

From Pres. McELDOWNEY, Albion College, Mich.

"This is the most valuable edition of Cæsar with which I am acquainted."

From Prof. H. W. HAYNES, University of Vermont.

"Never before have I seen such a lucid and simple explanation of Cæsar's bridge across the Rhine."

From Prof. C. S. HARRINGTON, Wesleyan University, Conn.

"The student who uses this edition must read Cæsar with a lively relish."

From Prof. W. A. STEVENS, Denison University Ohio.

"The notes are gotten up on the right principle, and are greatly superior to those of similar works in England."

From Prof. J. E. GINTNER, Otterbein University, Ohio.

"This is the only edition of Cæsar recommended to our classes."

From A. D. SANDBORN, Wilton Seminary, Iowa.

"I know of no work of the kind in which the notes so fully meet the wants of both teacher and pupil. I am delighted with the life of Cæsar."

From Prof. S. HASSELL, State Normal University, Del.

"This edition of Cæsar is superior to all others published in this country. The biographical sketch of the Roman commander is a splendid production."

Arnold's First Latin Book ;

Remodelled and Rewritten, and adapted to the Ollendorff Method of Instruction. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A. M. 12mo, 302 pages.

Under the labors of the present author, the work of Arnold has undergone radical changes. It has been adapted to the Ollendorff improved method of instruction, and is superior to the former work in its plan and all the details of instruction. While it proceeds in common with Arnold on the principle of imitation and repetition, it pursues much more exactly and with a surer step the progressive method, and aims to make the pupil master of every individual subject before he proceeds to a new one, and of each subject by itself before it is combined with others ; so that he is brought gradually and surely to understand the most difficult combinations of the language. An important feature of this book is, that it carries along the Syntax *pari passu* with the Etymology, so that the student is not only all the while becoming familiar with the forms of the language, but is also learning to construct sentences and to understand the mutual relations of their component parts.

Special care has been taken in the exercises to present such idioms and expressions alone as are authorized by the best classic authors, so that the learner may acquire by example as well as precept, a distinct idea of pure Latinity.

It has been a leading object with the author so to classify and arrange the various topics as to simplify the subject, and, as far as possible, to remove the disheartening difficulties too often encountered at the outset in the study of an ancient language.

From W. E. TOLMAN, Instructor in Providence High School.

"I have used Arnold's First Latin Book, remodelled and rewritten by Mr. Harkness, in my classes during the past year, and find it to be a work not so much remodelled and rewritten as one *entirely new*, both in its plan and in its adaptation to the wants of the beginner in Latin."

From WM. RUSSELL, Editor of the First Series of the Boston Journal of Education.

"The form which this work has taken under the skillful hand of Mr. H. is marked throughout by a method purely elementary, perfectly simple, gradually progressive, and rigorously exact. Pupils trained on such a manual cannot fail of becoming distinguished, in their subsequent progress, for precision and correctness of knowledge, and for rapid advancement in genuine scholarship."

From GEORGE CAPRON, Principal of Worcester High School.

"I have examined the work with care, and am happy to say that I find it superior to any similar work with which I am acquainted. I shall recommend it to my next class."

From J. R. BOISE, Professor of Ancient Languages in Michigan University.

"I have examined your First Book in Latin, and am exceedingly pleased both with the plan and execution. I shall not fail to use my influence toward introducing it into the classical schools of this State."

Second Latin Book.

Comprising an Historical Latin Reader, with Notes and Rules for Translating, and an Exercise Book, developing a Complete Analytical Syntax, in a series of Lessons and Exercises, involving the Construction, Analysis, and Reconstruction of Latin Sentences. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A.M., Senior Master in the Providence High School. 12mo, 362 pages.

This work is designed as a sequel to the author's "First Latin Book." It comprises a complete analytical syntax, exhibiting the essential structure of the Latin language, from its simplest to its most expanded and elaborate form.

The arrangement of the lessons is decidedly philosophical, gradually progressive, and in strict accordance with the law of development of the human mind. Every new principle is stated in simple, clear, and accurate language, and illustrated by examples carefully selected from the reading lessons, which the student is required to translate, analyze, and reconstruct. He is also exercised in forming new Latin sentences on given models. This, while it gives variety and interest to what would otherwise be in the highest degree monotonous, completely fixes in the mind the subject of the lesson, both by analysis and synthesis.

The careful study of this volume, on the plan recommended by the author, will greatly facilitate the pupil's progress in the higher departments of the language. Such is the testimony of the numerous institutions in which Harkness's improved edition* of Arnold has been introduced.

From J. A. SPENCER, D. D., late Professor of Latin in Burlington College, N. J.

"The present volume appears to me to carry out excellently the system on which the late lamented Arnold based his educational works; and in the Selections for Reading, the Notes and Rules for Translating, the Exercises in Translating into Latin, the Analyses, etc., I think it admirably adapted to advance the diligent student, not only rapidly, but soundly, in an acquaintance with the Latin language."

From PROF. GAMMELL, of Brown University.

"The book seems to me, as I anticipated it would be, a valuable addition to the works now in use among teachers of Latin in the schools of the United States, and for many of them it will undoubtedly form an advantageous substitute."

From PROF. LINCOLN, of Brown University.

"It seems to me to carry on most successfully the method pursued in the First Book. Though brief, it is very comprehensive, and combines judicious and skilfully-formed exercises with systematic instruction."

From J. J. OWEN, D. D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy, New York.

"This Second Latin Book gives abundant evidence of the author's learning and tact to arrange, simplify, and make accessible to the youthful mind the great and fundamental principles of the Latin language. The book is worthy of a place in every classical school, and I trust will have an extensive sale."

From PROF. ANDERSON, of Lewisburg University, Pennsylvania.

"A faithful use of the work would diminish the drudgery of the student's earlier studies, and facilitate his progress in his subsequent course. I wish the work a wide circulation."

Arnold's Latin Course :

- I. FIRST AND SECOND LATIN BOOK AND PRACTICAL GRAMMAR. Revised and Carefully Corrected, by J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo, 359 pages.
 - II. PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION, Revised and carefully corrected by J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo, 356 pages.
 - III. CORNELIUS NEPOS. With Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. With Notes by E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin, in University of New York. New edition, enlarged, with a Lexicon, Historical and Geographical Index, etc. 12mo, 350 pages.
-

Arnold's Classical Series has attained a circulation almost unparalleled, having been introduced into nearly all the leading educational institutions in the United States. The secret of this success is, that the author has hit upon the true system of teaching the ancient languages. He exhibits them ~~not~~ as dead, but as living tongues; and by imitation and repetition, the means which Nature herself points out to the child learning his mother-tongue, he familiarizes the student with the idioms employed by the elegant writers and speakers of antiquity.

The First and Second Latin Book should be put into the hands of the beginners, who will soon acquire from its pages a better idea of the language than could be gained by months of study according to the old system. The reason of this is, that every thing has a practical bearing, and a principle is no sooner learned than it is applied. The pupil is at once set to work on exercises.

The Prose Composition forms an excellent sequel to the above work, or may be used with any other course. It teaches the art of writing Latin more correctly and thoroughly, more easily and pleasantly, than any other work. In its pages Latin synonyms are carefully illustrated, differences of idioms noted, cautions as to common errors impressed on the mind, and every help afforded toward attaining a pure and flowing Latin style.

From N. WHEELER, Principal of Worcester County High School.

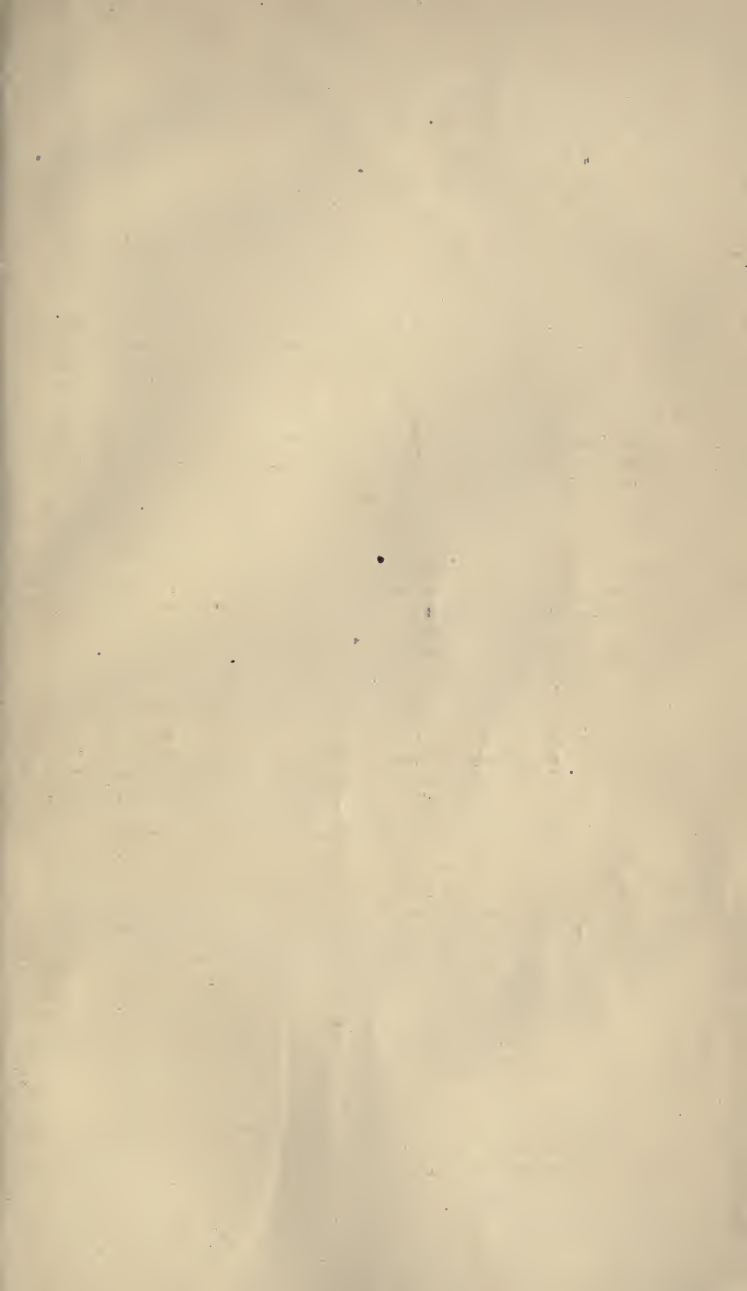
"In the skill with which he sets forth the *idiomatic peculiarities*, as well as in the directness and sympathy with which he states the facts of the ancient languages, Mr. Arnold has no superior. I know of no books so admirably adapted to awaken an *interest* in the study of the language, or so well fitted to lay the foundation of a correct scholarship and refined taste."

From A. B. RUSSELL, Oakland High School.

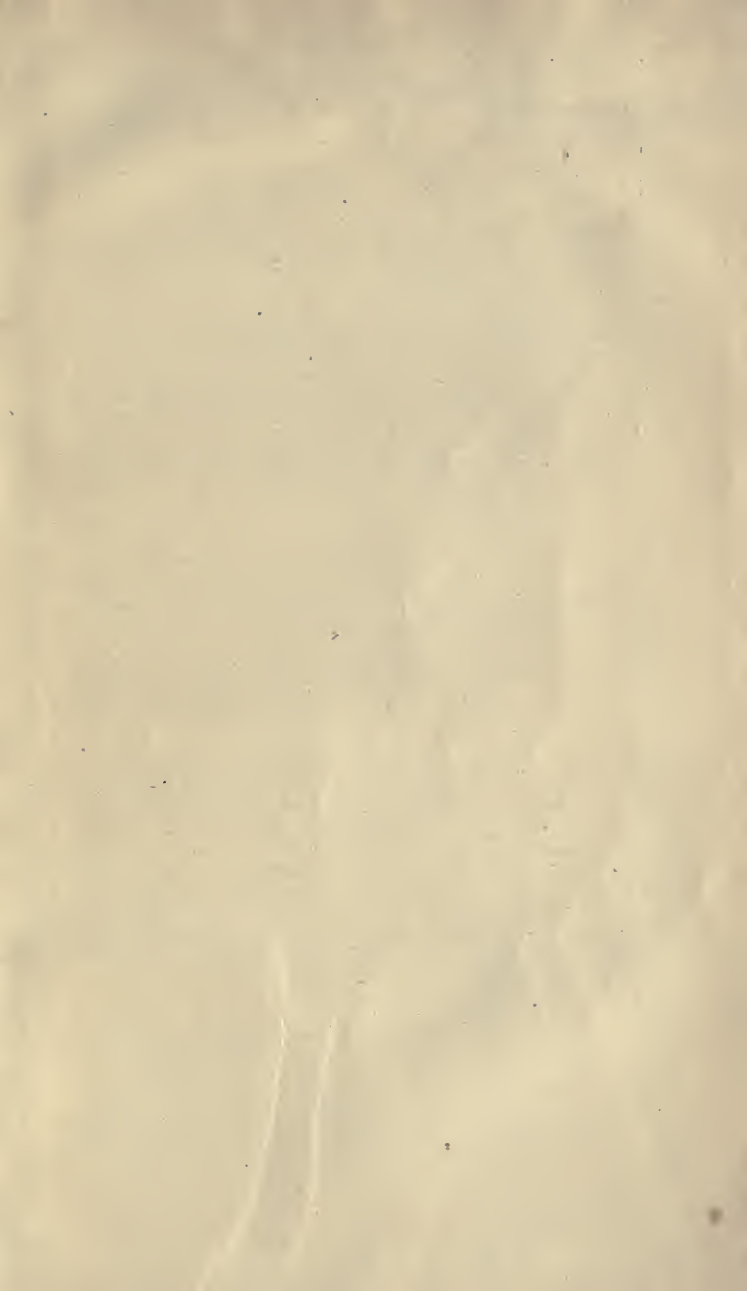
"The style in which the books are got up are not their only recommendation. With thorough instruction on the part of the teacher using these books as text-books, I am confident a much more ample return for the time and labor bestowed by our youth upon Latin must be secured. The time certainly has come when an advance must be made upon the old methods of instruction. I am glad to have a work that promises so many advantages as Arnold's First and Second Latin Book to beginners."

From C. M. BLAKE, Classical Teacher, Philadelphia.

"I am much pleased with Arnold's Latin Books. A class of my older boys have just finished the First and Second Book. They had studied Latin for a long time before, but never *understood* it, they say, as they do now."







THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE
STAMPED BELOW

AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS

WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN
THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY
WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH
DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY
OVERDUE.

OCT 11 1933

FEB 4 1935

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

Thucydides's History of the Peloponnesian War, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. With Map. 12mo.

Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates. With Notes and Introduction by R. D. C. ROBBINS, Professor of Language in Middlebury College. 12mo. 421 pages.

Anabasis. With Explanatory Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By JAMES R. BOISE, Professor of Greek in the University of Michigan. 12mo. 393 pages.

Anabasis. Chiefly according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Revised. With Map. 12mo.

Cyropædia, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. 12mo.

Sophocles's Œdipus Tyrannus. With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By HOWARD C. ROBBINS, Professor of Greek in the University of New York. 12mo.

HEBREW

Gesenius's Hebrew Lexicon, with Corrections and Additions by T. LEVI.

J. CONANT, Secretary, New York.

Uhlenuth's Hebrew Grammar, with Exercises in Syriac and Arabic, prepared by the Author.

59466

D. APPLETON & CO., 549 & 551 BROADWAY, N. Y.,

PUBLISHED UPWARD OF

300 SCHOOL TEXT-BOOKS,

Including the Departments of English, Latin, Greek, French, Spanish, Italian, Hebrew, and Syriac; of which a complete

DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE

Will be sent, free of postage, to those applying for it.

A single copy for examination, of any of the works marked thus *, will be transmitted by mail, postage prepaid, to any Teacher remitting one-half of its price. Any of the others will be sent by mail, postage prepaid, upon receipt of full retail price.

